

The new



2024

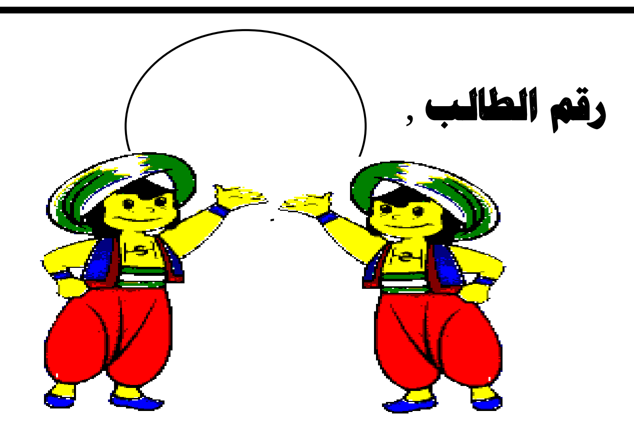
من أجلـــــكم تعلـــمنا ولكم ما تعلـــــمنا

second Year

الصف الثاني الثانوي

الاسم/ ....
العنوان/ ....
الامنية/ ....
كيفية التحقيق/ ....
فى حالة فقدان الكتيب برجاء الاتصال بـ/ ....

رقم الطالب ,



Unit 1

Staying healthy



health صحة	poster ملصق	lock يقفل \ قفل
infection عدوى	do first aid يعمل اسعافات اوليه	press down يضغط لاسفل
perform يجري \ يقوم ب	injured مصاب	rise up يرتفع لاعلي
react يتفاعل	emergency service خدمة	instructions تعليمات
severe شديد \ خطير	check يفحص	appear يظهر
technique تقنية	area منطقة	Covid -19 = corona virus
cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) تنفس صناعي	injuries اصابات	get ill يمرض
	awake مستيقظ	leaf \ leaves ورقة شجر
pump يضخ \ مضخة	bleeding نازف	a cold نزلة برد
heart قلب	injury اصابة	cough سعال \ كحة
damage تلف	shoulder كتف	stay up late يسهر لوقت متأخر
athletes لاعبي قوي	shout يصيح غضبا	fast food اطعمة سريعه
trophy غنيمة-كأس-نصب تذكاري	normal breathing تنفس طبيعي	persuade يقنع
sudden death موت مفاجيء	lying on راقد علي	persuasive مقنع
responsibility = charge	flat surface سطح مستوي	perfect كامل – تام
care for \ about يهتم ب	place = put يضع	do a course ياخذ دورة \ كورس
put on يضع مرهم \ كريم	chest صدر	brilliant متألق
gloves قفازات	encourage يشجع	champion بطل رياضي
bandage ضماده	brain مخ	expert خبير
wrap يطوي \ يلف	immune system جهاز مناعي	fantastic رائع
tight ضيق	fight يحارب \ يقاتل	a play مسرحيه
kits اطقم \ معدات \ ادوات	boost يعزز	a character شخصيه
available متوفر	cell خليه	an act فصل مسرحي \ بند \ قرار
lungs الرئتين	organ عضو	a scene مشهد
muscles عضلات	virus فيروس	kingdom مملكه
divide يقسم	foolish احمق	marry to يتزوج من
riches ثروات	honest امين	shout about يصيح في
duke دوق	power قوة –طاقة محركه	sword سيف
give away يتبرع	title لقب	beauty جمال
decide يقرر	decision قرار	answer to رد \ اجابة

Definitions

infection عدوى	a disease caused by a virus or bacteria.
perform يؤدى	: to do an action
react يستجيب	: do something because something has been done
severe جاد	: serious × mild

technique	تقنية	: a way of doing something with a skill.
boost	يعزز	: to help someone or something get better or improve.
cell	خلية	: The smallest separate part of an animal or a plant.
immune system	جهاز المناعة	: a way that your body protects you from disease.
organ	عضو	: A part of your body that performs a job.
virus	فيروس	: a very small living thing that causes disease
a play	مسرحية	A piece of writing that is written for acting in a theatre.
a character	شخصية	A person that an actor plays.
an act	فصل فى مسرحية	A larger part of a play .
a scene	مشهد	A small part of a play which happens in one place.

Prepositions & Expressions

stay strong & healthy	يبقي قويا \ بصحه جيده	lock your fingers	يقفا اصابعه
help ……+(to) infinitive	يساعد ان	press down	يضغط لاسفل
help ……with +(n.)	يساعد في	allow ….to	يسمح ان
help in + (n/v-ing .)	يساعد في	do a course	يأخذ كورس
make sure	يتأكد	do first aid	يقوم باسعاف اولي
check the area	يفحص المنطقة حول	stop + v-ing	يتوقف عن
move closer to	يتحرك اقرب الي	stop to + infinitive	يتوقف لكي يفعل
seem to + infinitive	يبدو ان	educate ….about	يثقف \ يعلم
seem + adjective	يبدو	disagree about	يرفض بخصوص
check for	يفحص لاجل	disagree with	لا يتفق مع
know how to	يعرف كيف ان	get + adjective(ill)	يصبح مريض
start \ begin + to + inf	يبدأ	no need for	لا حاجه ل
start \ begin + v-ing	يبدأ	encourage …to	يشجع ان
find out	يكتشف ان	divide into	يقسم الي
sound + adjective	يبدو ان	a third of	ثلث
lying on their back	راقد علي ظهره	stay up	يسهر
give ……….away	يتبرع \ يمنح	think of / about	يفكر في
tell …what to do	يخبر ما ان	spend time +v-ing	يقضي وقتا
forget about	ينسي امر	take up	يبدأ – يقبل القيام ب
hear from	يتلقي رسائل- اخبار	get on	يركب وسيله
rise up	يعلو	pull out	ينزع
fall down	يسقط		

Derivatives

verb		noun		adjective	
get healthy	يكون سليم	health	صحة	healthy	صحى
infect	يعدى	infection /infectiousness	عدوى/اصابة	infectious	معدى

perform يؤدى/يعزف	performer /performance عازف/ اداء	…………
do damage يدمر	damage دمار	damaged / damaging مدمر مدمر
wrap يغلف	wrapper مغلف	wrapped مغلف
decide يقرر	decision قرار	decisive حاسم
injure يجرح	injury جرح	injured جريح
encourage يشجع	encouragement تشجيع	encouraging مشجع
empower يزود بالطاقة	power قوة - طاقة	powerful قوى
persuade يقنع	persuasion اقناع	persuasive مقنع
get ill / sick يمرض	illness / sickness مرض	ill / sick مريض
beautify يجمل	beauty جمال	beautiful جميل
act يتصرف	action / actor / actress تصرف/ممثل/ممثلة	…………… ……….
characterize يميز	character /characteristic شخصية/ميزة	…………… ……..
marry يتزوج	married متزوج	marriage زواج
react يتصرف	reaction تصرف	…………..
educate يعلم	education تعليم	educated متعلم
immunize يحصن	**immunity /immunization** تحصين	immunized محصن

Words, synonyms and antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonyms	Antonyms	Meaning
health	صحة	soundness wellness	disease illness	مرض
flat	مسطح / مستو	straight / level smooth	rough/bumpy broken	خشن / غير مستقيم
infection	عدوى	contagion disease illness	sterility sanitation / health purification	تعقيم صحة نقاء
injury	اصابة	wound	remedy/cure	علاج
perform	يقوم ب	do/act /present	fail / avoid	يتوقف / يفشل
press	يضغط	squeeze	release	يطلق
severe	شديد / خطير	acute / serious extreme / tough	gentle	لطيف / بسيط
severe	عنيف / قوى	fierce / violent	mild	معتدل
normal	طبيعى	usual / regular ordinary/average	abnormal unusual	غير طبيعى
normal	عاقل / سوى	sane / rational	insane/irrational	غير عقلانى
normal	عاقل / سوى	sane / rational	insane/irrational	غير عقلانى

react	يتفاعل	proceed	cease	يتوقف
collaboration	تعاون / اشتراك	Participation partnership	isolation	عزلة
examination	فحص / اختبار	observation	negligence	اهمال
guide	يوجه / يرشد	advise	misguide	يسىء التوجيه
skill	مهارة	proficiency	incompetence	عدم كفاءة
tight	ضيق	Narrow / close / strained	loose	مفكك / واسع
immediately	فى الحال	Instantly / soon	later	فيما بعد

Don't get confused

breathe	يتنفس	**breath**	نفس
organ	عضو في الجسم	**member**	عضو في مجموعه
boost	يعزز	**boast**	يفتخر - يتباهي
technique	تقنيه تحتاج الي تدريب	**method**	طريقه متعارف عليها
soup	شوربة	**soap**	صابون
meal	وجبة	**diet**	نظام غذائى
menu	قائمةطعام	**list**	قائمة (1-2 -3)
dish	طبق- وجبة	**plate**	طبق

1) -I can't (**breathe**-breath) well here.
2) -I think his (**breath**-breathe)need CPR.
3) -The brain is the most important (member-**organ**).
4) -Studying more (**boosts**-boasts)your level.
5) -She always(boosts-**boasts**)about her family.

Language notes

***Experience** خبرة (لا تعد) * **experiment** تجربة معملية
expert(in \ at \ on خبير في

1- The teacher showed us how to do an important experiment.
2- He had the qualifications and experience to do great things.

Headline عنوان أخبار – جريدة **title** عنوان كتاب\ لقب
address عنوان منزل او بريد الكتروني

All I want is to keep the title of king.

Part of + شيء لاينفصل **♣part of a team**
a part of= شيء ينفصل **a part of this cake.**

لاحظ هذه الكلمات مع fall

Fall (asleep / ill / silent / vacant / unconscious)

Care for / about = look after يرعى/ يعتني بـ -
Care for = want يريد
Care about something يهتم

Who will care for me when I am old?
-Do you **care for** a cup of tea?
- He doesn't **care about** his studies.

- do / carry out / perform an operation: يقوم باجراء عملية جراحية
- Have an operation: تجرى له عملية جراحية

- She is **having** an **operation** on her heart.
- Surgeons **do operations** on people in hospitals.

Persuade يقنع شخص ان يتصرف convince يقنع شخص برأي / اعتقاد

He convinced me that he was right.
It wasn't easy, but I **persuaded** him to do the right thing.

♦ الصفة إما أن تسبق الاسم أو تلى بعض الأفعال مثل **To Be** ولكن الصفات التالية لا تستخدم قبل الاسم أبدا و لكن تستخدم بعد be وأفعال مثل **seem / look / feel**

afraid / awake / asleep / alone / alight / absent/alive

The boy **was afraid**. She **is** still **awake**.

- She was delighted with the news.
- Thank you for a delightful evening.

✓ Special متميز Private (ملاكي) خاص

- They always made a special effort at Christmas'
- He protects his private life and private feelings very closely.'

✓ Spend time +(v-ing) Ex : he spent most of his time surfing the internet.
✓ Spend money on Ex : she spent her money on clothes.

❖ Dessert حلويات desert صحراء \ يهجر

✓ الصفة تاتي بعد الموصوف مع الكلمات الاتيه :

✓ Something \ anything \ everything \ nothing \ someone \ anyone \ everyone\ none \ somebody \ anybody \ everybody \ nobody\somewhere \ anywhere \everywhere \nowhere

Ex : You have to get something ready to eat .

❖ Be right to \ have a \ the right to

⌦ Right (adj.) = correct EX: They are right to think positively.
⌦ a / the right (n.) EX: The public has the right to know about this

❖ Celebrate يحتفل commemorate يحيي ذكري

- ✓ I always celebrate my birthday by going to dinner.
- ✓ We commemorate those who lost their lives in 1973 war.

١ يمكن تحويل بعض الأفعال إلي أسماء بإضافة(ance – ion)

act	يتصرف	action	تصرف
operate	يجرى عملية	operation	عملية
infect	يعدى	infection	عدوى
guide	يرشد	guidance	ارشاد
allow	يسمح	allowance	سماح
perform	يؤدى	performance	اداء

do

do an action	يقوم بعمل شئ	do exercises	يتمرن
do first aid	يقوم باسعافات اولية	do CPR	يقوم بالانعاش القلبي الرئوي
do a sport	يمارس رياضه		

Have

have a healthy heart	لديه قلب سليم	have a responsibility	لديه مسئوليه
have flu	يعاني من الانفلونزا	have good hygiene	يتبع قواعد النظام الشخصي
have severe injuries	لديه اصابات بالغه		

Get

get a cold	يصاب بنزله برد	get a virus	يصاب بعدوي فيروسيه
get an infection	يصاب بمرض معدى	get better	يتحسن
get enough sleep	يحصل علي قدر كاف من النوم	get money	يحصل علي مال

Expressions

suggest a solution	يقدم حل	miss the chance	يفوت الفرصه
perform/ do CPR	يقوم بالانعاش القلبي الرئوي	do / perform the first aids	يقوم بعمل الاسعافات الاوليه
first aid kit	صندوق الاسعافات الاوليه	send blood around	يضخ الدم خلال

Exercises

1-Don't ………….the chance or you will regret.

a-gets b-miss c-cause d-make

2-My dad always………..solutions to our problems.

a-does b-suggest c-carries d-plays

3-He ……….some exercises every day.

a-does b-makes c-brings d-cooks

4-CRR is ………when someone can't breath

a-made b-done c-had d-written

5-You'll………the virus if you don't follow the hygienic rules

a-make b-do c-get d-reform

6-He………some fatal mistakes

a-did b-made c-brought d-played

7-It'svery necessary to……..the first aid

a-perform b-do c-makes d-a&b

Infection

suffer from infection	يعاني من عدوي	treat/fight an infection	يكافح عدوي
get/ develop an infection	يصاب بعدوي	spread an infection	ينشر عدوي
serious infection	عدوي شديده	clear up an infection	يزيل عدوي
serve infection	عدوي شديده	a cutes infection	عدوي شديده

lie, lay, lain يستلقى – يغفو

- don't **lie** in the sun for too long.

lie, lay, lain يقع

- the house **lies** in a small valley.

lie, lay ,lain يتبعثر

- toys were **lying** all over the bedroom floor.

lie ,lied ,lied يكذب

- she **lied** to her parents about where she was on Friday.

lay, laid, laid تبيض

- a hen can **lay** a few eggs per week, i think.

lay, laid, laid يضع

- he **laid** his hand on my shoulder.

cell

- prisoners must spend twenty-two hours a day in their cells. زنزانة
- - Red blood cells carry oxygen around the body. كرات الدم
- - The police have recently attacked a terrorist cell. خلية – مجموعة

severe

- Spending the winter in the mountains was a severe test of their determination. محنة - امتحان قاسى

- - My mom has rather severe taste in clothes. متشدد
- When she got home late, he found his mother waiting for him with a severe look on her face عبوس - متجهم

boost

- - Recently, the company has achieved a boost in sales. زيادة
- - Getting a new car from her parents was a boost for Rose. دعم - مساندة
- The company needs to find ways to boost production يزيد - يحسن

check

- - I'm going to pay the bill with a **check**. شيك
- - The diners asked for the **check**. فاتورة الحساب
- - The technician is going to perform a **check** on the car. فحص
- The airport staff **checked** my hand luggage. يفتش
- **Check** the box that says "I accept". يضع علامة صح
- If you're looking for the umbrella, **check** in the closet. – يلقى نظرة

Back

- Please read the text on the **back** of the paper. خلف
- - You should **back** your argument with facts. يساند - دعّم
- They show the programme three times a day, often **back to back**. على التوالى

press

- The more you **press** a wet sponge, the more water you will get out of it. يعصر
- The prime minister's memo was leaked to the **press**. الصحافة
- I need to **press** these trousers. They're all rumpled.يكوى

Come off

- - Ali **came off** his bike as he rounded the last corner, but wasn't badly hurt. يسقط من على
- - I thought your **performance came off** really well. ينجح – يبلى بلاءا حسنا
- - Dave **came off** heroin two years ago. يتوقف عن تعاطى

sound

- - He's in **sound** health for his age. جيد - سليم
- - That's a **sound** idea. منطقى - معقول
- - Buying shares in that company may not be a **sound** investment. آمن
- - The firefighter **sounded** the alarm. يطلق – يرن

Choose the correct answer

1- His plans to start his own business …………. off. He was happy.

a) did b) put c) made d) came

2- It was two thirty when the bell ……………… for dinner.

a) silenced b) founded c) sounded d) seemed

3- …………… the oranges onto the juicer to make a healthy drink.

a) Press b) Release c) Compress d) Express

4- There is an index in the ……………. of the book.

a) peak b) pick c) pack d) back

5- A lot of people try to come off smoking. The verb "come off" means …….

a) try b) stop c) increase d) addict

6- The book he gave me is full of ………….. advice. I'll take it.

a) passive b) silly c) bad d) sound

7- I'll need to ……………… my suit before going to the party.

a) squeeze b) shrink c) wet d) press

8- I think the door is locked, but I'll have to check. Check here means ….. .

a) doubt b) inspect c) test d) make sure

9- "Do you have these shoes in a larger size?" "I don't know. Let me check." Check here means ……… .

a) hear b) listen c) take a look d) take a bath

10- I'll have to check with the manager before I can let you in. Check here means ………………. .

a) look at b) make sure c) listen to d) talk to

11- The ……………. does not always report the truth.

a) stress b) newspapers c) press d) radios

12- All the workers asked for a ……………… in salary

a) arouse b) increase c) decrease d) boost

13- Alice's father was a ……. man who expected his children to obey him at all times.

a) server b) severe c) kind d) merciful

14- If you need to reach me, just call my …………….

a) cell b) seal c) sail d) soil

15- She won the annual competition two times back to …………….

a)front b) back c) behind d) below

How to perform first aid

1) If you find an ill or injured person, you must check the area around him/her first to make sure it isn't dangerous. Then move closer to the person and look carefully at them. Do they seem to be very ill? Do they have severe injuries?

2) If the person is awake but not bleeding, you have to ask them how they feel and what happened. Check their body for signs of injury or infection. You don't have to touch the person's body to do this.

3) If the person doesn't reply, touch their shoulder or their foot and shout to see if they react, and remember to check for normal breathing.

4) If the person isn't breathing, someone must call the 'emergency service immediately.

5) If you know how to perform CPR, you have to do this to help the person start breathing again. However, you mustn't do CPR unless the person is lying on their back on a flat surface such as the floor.

6) Place your other hand on the centre of the person's chest. Put your other hand on top of the first hand and lock your fingers together. Make sure that your shoulders are above your hands.

7) You don’t have to press down on the person’s chest very much- only five to six centimetres. Keep your hands on their chest and allow it to rise up again. You have to do this 100 to 120 times a minute until the person starts breathing again

Choose the correct answers

Yesterday the police 1) **has to** / **had to** help a robber who couldn't get down from a tree. Jim Sly went into the house of 2) **80-year-old** / **80-years old** Emily Bishop while she was 3) **asleep** / **sleep**. Her dog, Rover, woke up and ran after Sly. The dog could run fast 4) **but** / **so** Sly was able to get into the garden and up the tree. Emily said, ‘The man 5) **needn’t have** / **didn't have to** run away. Rover is a very nice dog. He **should have** said Hello and 6) **gave** / **given** him a biscuit.

Choose the correct answers

Taking a pulse is **1) the** / **a** very important part of heart health checks. It measures the **2) number** / **amount** of heart beats **3) in** / **per** minute, assesses if the pulse is regular **4) and** / **or** not, and identifies the strength of the pulse. Your nurse or doctor may check your **5) plus** / **pulse**, or you can check it by **6) you** / **yourself.**

Choose the correct answers

First Aid knowledge is **1) valuable** / **useless** for both individuals and community. It enables you to **2) assist** / **avoid** persons who become **3) healthy** / **injured** in case of an accident or **4) normal** / **emergency** situation until help arrives. First Aid skills can **5)** apply / be applied at home, the workplace or in public locations, therefore the more First Aid experienced people there are in a community, the **6) safer** / **safest** that community becomes.

Choose the correct answer

1. The new …… Ola is trying seems to be working; she lost three pounds last week.
a) feed **b) food** **c) bite** **d) diet**

2. I never ………….. the chance to watch football. It's fantastic.
a) win **b) lose** **c) miss** **d) take**

3. Wise people try to keep their professional life completely …….. from their private life.
a) united **b) separate** **c) attached** **d) linked**

4. The human brain is an incredibly complicated …………….
a) organism **b) organic** **c) member** **d) organ**

5. I was walking down the street when, all of a …………, it started raining.
a) sudden **b) suddenly** **c) sadden** **d) sadness**

6. The government hopes its efforts in the field of industry will …… the economy.
a) demolish **b) boost** **c) beast** **d) boot**

7. Very few people care ………….. the issue of global warming.
a) for **b) on** **c) in** **d) about**

8. The local authority is working in ….. with the police to reduce car crime.
a) invention **b) invitation** **c) sensation** **d) collaboration**

9. I misplaced my keys, so I'll have to look …………… for them.
a) into **b) out** **c) around** **d) in**

10. He is so poor that he has no raincoat to ……… himself from the rain.
a) react **b) protect** **c) attract** **d) expose**

11. The footballer …………….. career was cut short by a leg injury.
a) athlete **b) athletics** **c) athletic** **d) poetic**

12. The doctor lightly ……… down on her stomach to feel the baby move.
a) released **b) pressed** **c) missed** **d) stressed**

13. He ………… his fingers around her wrist and refused to let go.
a) mocked **b) shocked** **c) blocked** **d) locked**

14. Nearly 10% of the Earth's ………….. is covered by ice.
a) surface **b) roof** **c) depth** **d) height**

15. Ali has lost his job and his wife left him, but he keeps going; his…… is remarkable
a) resistance **b) obedience** **c) resilience** **d) silence**

16. To avoid ……. problems, always bend your knees when you lift heavy objects.
a) stomach **b) kidney** **c) eye** **d) back**

17. We are glad that Sara's …………… at school has greatly improved.
a) romance **b) importance** **c) performance** **d) violence**

18. Your ……… is the front part of your body between your neck and your stomach
a) fist **b) chest** **c) back** **d) eyelash**

19. When he arrived home, he saw his wife lying on the kitchen ………..
a) floor **b) flour** **c) surface** **d) ceiling**

20. Poor hygiene can increase the danger of …………….
a) deflection **b) protection** **c) prevention** **d) infection**

21. We provide these services because the …. of our employees is important to us.
a) wellness **b) disease** **c) illness** **d) sickness**

22. She poured the guest a cup of tea and ………….. it on the table.
a) misplaced **b) placed** **c) pleased** **d) lifted**

23. After the accident, she was taken to hospital with serious head…….
a) treatment **b) injuries** **c) cures** **d) aids**

24. If you're sick you should stay home to avoid …… other people in the office.
a) infecting **b) protecting** **c) treating** **d) healing**

25. Some people claim that this herb has …………. value for treating pain.
a) poetic **b) tragic** **c) therapeutic** **d) romantic**

26. The firefighters must ……………. quickly when they hear the alarm.
a) escape **b) deny** **c) attract** **d) react**

27. …………. in the soil help break down organic material.
a) Seeds **b) Insects** **c) Bacteria** **d) Worms**

28. You can take …………… measures to reduce crime in your area.
a) attentive **b) attractive** **c) inventive** **d) preventive**

29. When I went into his room, he was …. on the bed smoking a cigarette.
a) laying **b) flying** **c) lying** **d) sneezing**

30. Make sure that the ground is ……………. enough to put a chair on.
a) fainting **b) flat** **c) curved** **d) bumpy**

31. I usually find it difficult to stay …………….. during boring lessons.
a) awake **b) asleep** **c) boring** **d) dizzy**

32. 'Did you lock the front door?' 'I think so, but I'd better …………. sure.'
a) make **b) do** **c) perform** **d) react**

33. It's …………….. for most students to feel nervous before an exam.
a) formal **b) normal** **c) informal** **d) abnormal**

34. A team of six scientists ……………… the experiment last week.
a) performed **b) formed** **c) informed** **d) permitted**

35. Workers in the …………….. services are forbidden from striking.
a) informal **b) trivial** **c) emergency** **d) pregnancy**

36. My thumb is …………….; I must have accidentally cut myself.
a) feeding **b) vomiting** **c) bleeding** **d) swallowing**

37. Some people think that crying is a ……………. of weakness.
a) signal **b) sign** **c) design** **d) resign**

38. There are various ………….. for dealing with environmental pollution.

a) technical b) method c) techniques d) way

39. Messi is a great ……………, a true inspiration to her team members.

a) criminal b) athletics c) athletic d) athlete

40. The boys denied any ………….. for the damage to the TV.

a) response b) responsibility c) responsible d) irresponsible

41. The lifeguard pulled the little child out of the swimming pool and began…………

a) etc. b) VIP c) CPR d) CV

42. This illness is caused by bacteria not a ……………?

a) virus b) versus c) minus d) plus

43. When I was ill, mom …………… up all night by my bedside.

a) lived b) played c) awoke d) stayed

44. After taking vaccinations, children develop ……………. to a disease.

a) immune b) immunity c) immunize d) unity

45. I'm sorry you are sick and I hope you ………… better soon.

a) made b) did c) stay d) get

46. After the final match, the winning team captain held the ………. In the air.

a) virus b) knife c) trophy d) atrophy

47. The pills might have helped him, if only he'd taken them …………...

a) regularly b) regular c) irregular d) regularity

48. My family decided to go on a………… trip to Luxor.

a) two-days b) two-day c) two days d) two-day's

49. The police didn't have any ….. evidence that he had committed the crime.

a) passive b) persuasion c) persuade d) persuasive

50. He called me bad names. I tried to stay ………… and just ignore him.

a) angry b) calm c) palm d) calmness

51. Human Rights groups are calling ………… setting all political prisoners free.

a) from b) out c) in d) for

52. My sister took painting ……………. for a while, but soon lost interest.

a) up b) in c) on d) off

53. Shady had huge ……………… because he used to go to the gym.

a) hearts b) ears c) muscles d) bones

54. You …………… tired. I think it's better for you to get some rest.

a) found b) pound c) sound d) voice

55. The next person who gets …… the bus will have to stand, because there are no seats left.

a) onto b) out of c) off d) on

56. During flu season, it's important to keep your immune ……….. strong to avoid getting sick.

a) link b) system c) organization d) stem

57. “Is that a big enough piece of pie?” “Yes, it's ………….., thanks.”

a) perfect b) dull c) tasteless d) dirty

58. The school's director decided to send the student away as he doesn't like the way he ………

a) befriends b) belongs c) behaves d) believes

59. Being given first ……. at the scene of the accident probably saved his life.

a) aid b) said c) paid d) laid

60. He wouldn’t have given you the job in the first ……………. if he didn’t think you could do it.

a) phase b) place c) position d) location

Grammar

- **Necessity** الضرورة		
إثبات	**in the present**	نفى
1- Must + inf 2- Have/ has to		- don't /doesn't have to + inf
3- need / s to + inf		- needn't + inf don't/doesn't need to + inf

- today is off work, so we (have to – **don't have to**) get up early.
- He (**must** – doesn't have to) do the homework.
- She (has to – **doesn't need to**) buy more clothes, she has already had a lot.
- He (must – **doesn't have to**) answer all questions as he can answer 5 from 6.

Necessity in the past الضرورة فى الماضى

It was necessary	it wasn't necessary	
had to + inf	didn't have to + inf	ذكى
	didn't need to + inf	ذكى
	needn't have + p.p	حمار

- He (**had to** – didn't have to) apologize to his friend, he insulted him.
- She (had to – **didn't need to**) past the letter yesterday as she can past it today.
- I'm angry, he (**had to** – should – didn't have to) tell me the time of the conference. I missed it.



- Must/ have to/ will have to + inf - will need to	- won't have to - won't need to + inf

- He (**will have** – has) to visit that man tomorrow .
- He (will – **won't**) have to get up early tomorrow it's holiday .

ركز مع الدرس

1- Have to / Has to مضطـــــــر أن

- تستخدم (Have to / Has to) للتعبير عن إلزام مفروض علينـــا وليـــس أمامنـــا اختيـــار

- Have to / Has to = It is necessary to do..... (We have no other choice)

- You **have to** show your passport when you leave the country.
- I can't go out. **I have to** work. - My children **have to** go to school next year.

- يمكن استخدام **have to** في الأزمنة المختلفة (ما عدا الأزمنة المستمرة)

- I **had to** work six days a week. = - **It was necessary** for me **to** work six days a week.
- My flight is at six in the morning. **I'll have to** get up early.
- **Have** you ever **had to** go to hospital?

- تستخدم (do / does) مع (Have to / Has to) في السؤال و النفي

- Do you have to put on a uniform at school?
- She doesn't have to buy a new dictionary for school?

- يمكن أن نستخدم (have got to / has got to) بدلا من (have to / has to)

- I have got to go to work on time.
- She is late for the meeting, she has got to take a taxi.

- نستخدم (have got to / has got to) في السؤال بدون فعل مساعد

- **Have** you **got to** be at the office every day?
- **Has** that man **got to** carry all the boxes by himself?

2- Don't / Doesn't have to / Don't / Doesn't need to / needn't :

It is NOT necessary to do..... غير مضطر - لا داعي أن

- She isn't late for school so she **doesn't have to / needn't** hurry.
- When you are on holiday, you **needn't** go to bed early.
- She **doesn't have to** work on Saturday.

3- - Didn't have to = didn't need to = It wasn't necessary to..., so we didn't لم نضطر أن

- تستخدم هذه الأفعال للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة في الماضي (حدث لـــم يتــم في الماضي لأنه لم يكن ضروريا)

- We **didn't have to** go to school yesterday. It was a holiday.
- I **didn't have to** do the shopping yesterday. My brother did it.

4- Needn't have + PP. : It wasn't necessary to....., but we did

- يستخدم هذا الفعل للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة في الماضي (حدث تـــم في الماضي على الرغم من كونه لم يكن ضروريا)

- You **needn't have brought** your umbrella. It's not going to rain.

- لاحظ الفارق في المعني في الجمل الآتية

- I **didn't have to buy** more bread. We already have a lot.
  (I **didn't buy** bread because we have some.)
- I **needn't have bought** more bread. We already have a lot.
  (I **bought** bread, but it was not necessary because we have some.)

didn't need to / didn't have to ⟵ لم يكن ضروري و لذا لم يفعل
needn't have + p.p ⟵ لم يكن ضروري و لكنـــه فعل

- He (didn't have to water – **needn't have watered**) the garden. Really he did.

- في حالة التعبير عن الضرورة في المستقبل نستخدم **must / have to / will have to**

- I **have to get** up early tomorrow.
- I'**ll have to** send the fax tomorrow.

- لاحظ الفرق بين استخدام **need to** كفعل ناقص واستخدام **need** كفعل عادي بمعني يحتاج أو يتطلب

- This job **needs** computer skills.
- I **need to** finish the job early. = I **must** finish it early.

Mustn't + inf. متى نستخدم

❖ للتعبير عن شئ غير مسموح أو ممنوع قانوناً / خطير جداً وضار بك .

• against the law / rules	ضد القواعد / القوانين	• be forbidden	محظور
• be banned	ممنوع	• **be not allowed**	غير مسموح
• No parking /smoking			

- You (don't have to – **mustn't**) eat this food it's sour فاسد .
- You (don't need to – **mustn't**) park here it's not allowed .

- You (don't have to – **mustn't**) take photos . It's a " No photography sign .

تستخدم **mustn't** فى النصح الشديد بالنفى وكذلك الأمنية .

- You (**mustn't** – don't have to) spend too much money you will want some for your holiday .

must يفضل

1- warm invitation دعوة حارة بشدة

- you (**must** – have to) come to my party .

2- strong advice نصح قوى

- You (**must** – have to) wash your hands before meals .

3- feelings and wishes مشاعر ورغبات خاصة بنا

- I really (have – **must**) read this story . It's so interesting .

4- a strong reminder تذكرة لنفسك بقوة مثل الواجبات

- I (must – have to) visit my friend who is very ill .

5-Criticizing others

للتعبير عن نقد سلوكيات الاخرين mustنستخدم

- **Must**-have to)you always interrupt me when I'm speaking?

- **ركز في الفارق بين الجملتين**
- I **have to** stop smoking .It's the doctor's orders
- هنا التوقف عن التدخين هو الخيار الاوحد رغم انه من الشخص نفسه
- I **must** stop smoking .It's the doctor's advice
- عندما نذكر كلمة نصيحه الافضل must

need to , must عن have to يفضل

نستخدم هذه الصيغة عندما تتحدث عن أمور مفروضة علينا فى الخارج أى ليس لنا الاختيار نفعلها اضطراراً لأننا لسنا مخيرين فى فعلها

- You (**have to** – must) pass your exam to go to the university .
- You (shouldn't – **mustn't**) park here, it's not allowed قوانين
- This is my invitation card, you (should – **must**) come.
- This book is interesting, you (should – **must**) read it.
- You (**must** – should) wear the seat belt, it's a rule.

Should / ought to ينبغي \ يجب

-1-تستخدم should –ought to لاعطاء النصيحة:

should/shouldn't + inf
ought to/ought not to(oughtn't) to +inf

- You **should** work hard to achieve your goal . you **shouldn't waste** your time
- One **ought to** keep fit . he or she **ought not to** eat unhealthy food

2-كما تستخدم should-ought to لتوجيه اللوم او التعبير عن الندم لعدم القيام في الماضي بشيء كان من المفترض القيام به :

Subj.+should /ought to +have +p.p

I should have taken my medicine on timeندم-كان يجب ان افعل
you ought to have arrived earlyلو م–كان يجب القيام بذلك

3-وتستخدم ought not to –shouldn't لتوجيه اللوم او التعبير عن الندم للقيام بشئ في الماضي كان من المفترض عدم القيام به:

Subj.+shouldn't/ought not (oughtn't)to+have+p.p

I oughtn't to have shouted at my sisterندم-كان يجب الا افعل ذلك
you shouldn't have added too much salt لوم-كان من المفترد عدم القيام بذلك
عندما نجد had to/should have +p.p في اختيار واحد

Should have +p.p	كان يجب ان يفعل و لكنه لم يفعل و هنا اللوم
Had to+inf	كان مضطرا ان يفعل اي انه فعل و هنا ضرورة حدوث شئ في الماضي

1-He(**should have borrowed**-**had to borrow**)some money from his brother . he borrowed from his friend
2-He (should have borrowed-**had to borrow**)some money from his brother but he gave him just half of the sum

have to و must حاجه بسيطه نتذكر بها

must	have to	
الافضل + ✓	✓	النصح بشده
✓	×	الالزام الداخلى
✓	الافضل+ ✓	الالزام الخارجى
بشكل عام ✓	بشكل خاص ✓	القوانين بالايجاب
mustn't ✓	×	القوانين بالسلب
الافضل ✓ ✓	✓	الضروره فى المستقبل
✓	✓	الضروره فى المضارع
✓	×	الدعوة
✓	×	الترشيح
✓	×	الاستنتاج
✓	×	تستخدم كفعل مساعد

- You(**must**- have to) obey your parent.
- I (**must**-have to) visit my friend. He is sick.
- There are no abuse I (**have to**- must) take a taxi.
- You (must-**have to**) be here before 8 o'clock.
- I (**must**-have to) meet my uncle tomorrow.
- (must- **Do**) they have to take this ?
- You (**must**-have to) come round and visit us.
- The film is very interestingly. You (**must**-have to) watch it.

Choose the correct answer: practice1

1- you ……..wash the car. The man at the garage will wash it tomorrow.
a-mustn't b-can't c-might not d-needn't
2- you ………… be 18 to drive a car in England
a-might b)need c-have to d-ought to
3- we ...hurry. it only takes ten minutes to the station and we have an hour before the train goes.
a-mustn't b-can't c-might not d-don't have to
4- you 'll ………… buy a ticket before you travel on the train

a-must b-have to c-had to d-has to

5- Tarek …… get the bus to the park. My father can take him in our car

a-mustn't b-needn't to c-doesn't have to d-have to

6- At an airport, what do you ….. show before you can leave the country?

a-must b-had to c-have to d-has to

7- you …………. to show your passport when you leave the country.\

a-must b-have c-had d-needn't

8- Before our next English lesson, what must we ……. For homework?

a-does b-done c-did d-do

9- What do you …….. do at school every day? What mustn't you do?

a-have to b-has to c-must d-had to

10- What ……..you remember to do this weekend?

a-have b-must c-will have to d- had to

Choose the correct answer: practice2

1. Ali …………brought food. We already have a lot

a-needn't have b-must not have c-must have d-should have

2. we didn't have a test today so I …………for it last night

a-needn't revise b-didn't have to revise
c-mustn't revise d-needn't have revise

3. -Poor Hany ……… go to hospital yesterday after he hurt his hand.

a-must b- has to c-had to d-needn't

4. Mona…….. to take her sunglasses because it was cloudy

a-doesn't need b-needn't c-didn't have d-doesn't have

5. Yunis ……. to do the maths exercise again because he got it all wrong

a-had b-won't have c-didn't have d-doesn't need

6. They …….leave the school yesterday after they heard the fire bell

a-had to b-have to c-has to d- must

7. The students ……….written all those notes. All the information is typed for them

a-didn't have to b-mustn't c-didn't need to d-needn't have

8. In school last week, why …………..you have to do P.E?

a-didn't b-won't c-don't d-mustn't

9. What did you……….buy when you went to the bookshop last weekend?

a-must b-had to c-have to d-has to

10. What ………. I have brought to your house yesterday evening?

a-don't b-needn't c-didn't d-don't

11. What did you do recently that you ……..have done?

a-doesn't b-mustn't c-needn't d-didn't

12. we…….run to the museum because it was already closed when we got there

a-needn't have b-didn't have to c-don't have to d-must

13. Poor Walid broke his leg yesterday and ……..go to hospital

a-had to b-must c-needn't d-has to

Choose the correct answer: practice3

- I ……….forget to email my cousin today. It's his birthday

a-mustn't b-needn't c-ought not to d-shouldn't

- the sign in the park says that people ……..walk on the grass.

a-needn't b-might not c-should d-mustn't

- When you go to Alexandria, you ……. visit the library. It's amazing

a-have to b-must c-will d-need

- we've moved to a new house, so you ……………come round and see it

a-mustn't b- has to c- must d- have to

- we ….. pass our exams to get into university.

a-must have b-mustn't c-don't have to d-have to

- you…… put the newspaper on the oven. It might burn

a-mustn't b-don't have to c-need to d-needn't have

- My sister made a cake . you ….. try it. It's lovely

a-have to b-had to c-must d-needn't

- you…….. come and see me tomorrow

a-must b-has to c-had to d-mustn't

Choose the correct answer

1. Sorry, I …………….. go now. I don't want to be late.

a) must b) have to c) needn't d) didn't have to

2. Sorry, I …………….. go now. my parents will be angry if I'm late.

a) must b) have to c) needn't d) didn't have to

3. At our school, we …………….. wear a uniform.

a) don't need b) has got to c) must d) have to

4. You …………….. cross the roads without looking. It's dangerous.

a) have to b) mustn't c) must d) don't need to

5. You ……………… turn on the central heating. It's automatic.

a) needn't b) have got to c) doesn't need to d) had to

6. The exams are next week. I …………… work harder

a) needn't b) mustn't c) have to d) had to

7. Students ……………. listen to the teacher or they won't understand.

a) have to b) don't have to c) had to d) mustn't

8. We ……………… leave now or we'll miss the plane.

a) had to b) must to c) have got to d) has got to

9. You ………….. to come with us if you don't want to.

a) need b) haven't got c) needn't d) don't have

10. I was late this morning because I …….. wait a long time for the bus.

a) needn't b) must c) have to d) had to

11. I ……………. wear glasses because I can't see very well.

a) had to b) have to c) mustn't d) don't need to

12. You …………….. read this book. It's really good.

a) must b) have to c) needn't d) don't need

13. You …………. go shopping today. We don't need anything.

a) needn't b) don't need c) haven't got d) mustn't

14. Every player in a football team ……………. have a number.

a) must b) should c) have got to d) needn't

15. Doctors sometimes …………. work at the weekend.

a) have to b) have got c) must d) need

16. Nowadays in Egypt, pupils …………… learn English at school.

a) have to b) doesn't have to c) need d) had to

17. My wife …………… go to work today. It's a holiday.

a) mustn't b) must c) doesn't have to d) doesn't need

18. At a restaurant, you have to pay the bill but you ………. eat everything.
a) had to **b) have to** **c) mustn't** **d) don't need to**
19. You ………. come to the meeting, but it will be nice if you are there.
a) have to **b) don't have to** **c) had to** **d) mustn't**
20. You …………… start saving money if you want to retire in few years.
a) must **b) has to** **c) has got to** **d) needn't**
21. My brother ………….. wear a tie in his work, but I do.
a) mustn't **b) doesn't have to** **c) has got to** **d) has to**
22. You ……………… eat healthier and stop smoking, you will feel better.
a) mustn't **b) must** **c) doesn't have to** **d) need**
23. People mustn't drink and drive cars. It is ……………
a) optional **b) advisable** **c) permitted** **d) prohibited**
24. John can't come because he …………. work tomorrow.
a) mustn't **b) doesn't have to** **c) must** **d) has to**
25. She has a big problem. We ……………… help her
a) needn't **b) need** **c) have to** **d) must**
26. You …………. sign a document without reading it first.
a) mustn't **b) don't have to** **c) must** **d) ought to**
27. Every man ………… do military service in my country. It's obligatory.
a) needn't **b) has to** **c) have to** **d) must**
28. When do we ………… pay for the next term?
a) have to **b) have got to** **c) must** **d) need**
29. A pilot ……….. train for many years to get a licence.
a) must **b) should** **c) have got to** **d) has to**
30. …………… Sara work long hours at school?
a) Does **b) Has** **c) Must to** **d) Had**
31. I …………. get up early on Sundays. I can stay in bed.
a) needn't **b) need** **c) have to** **d) must**
32. You have ………….. a visa to travel to the USA.
a) got to **b) got to have** **c) got have** **d) to having**
33. My daughter …………….. to cook, because I cook for the whole family.
a) needs **b) haven't got** **c) needn't** **d) don't have**
34. When the party was over, I realized that you …………… cooked so much food as most of it was untouched.
a) needed **b) didn't need** **c) should have** **d) needn't have**
35. Teachers ….wear suits for work, but their clothes must be neat and clean.
a) mustn't **b) don't have to** **c) must** **d) has to**
36. You ………… arrive on time for lessons. It's important not to be late.
a) need to **b) haven't got** **c) needn't** **d) have to**
37. You …………..eat lunch in the school canteen. Some students prefer to go home for lunch.
a) needn't **b) need** **c) have to** **d) must**
38. You …………. buy a course book, your teacher will give you one.
a) mustn't **b) have got to** **c) don't have to** **d) has to**
39. Students……………… take an exam at the end of the year.
a) must **b) doesn't have to** **c) has got to** **d) have to**

40. Don't tell anyone what I said. You ………….. keep it a secret.
a) mustn't **b) don't have to** **c) must** **d) have to**
41. I …….. forget to go shopping today. I have got nothing at home to eat.
a) must **b) should** **c) had to** **d) has to**
42. The shirt is not dirty. You …………… wash it
a) needn't **b) need** **c) don't have** **d) must**
43. I …………… get up early tomorrow. the train leaves at 6.
a) mustn't **b) don't have to** **c) have got to** **d) had to**
44. You ………… wash those tomatoes. They have already been washed.
a) must **b) don't have to** **c) have got to** **d) mustn't**
45. I understand your situation perfectly. You ………. explain any further.
a) needn't **b) need** **c) have to** **d) must**
46. It didn't rain, you needn't have taken your umbrella. It was …………..
a) necessary **b) not necessary** **c) obligatory** **d) a must**
47. I haven't got lots of money; I ……………. waste it.
a) mustn't **b) need** **c) needn't** **d) have to**
48. Do you want me to wait for you? No it's OK, you …………….. wait.
a) mustn't **b) don't have to** **c) need to** **d) have to**
49. This book is very expensive, you …………… look after it very carefully.
a) must **b) shouldn't** **c) had to** **d) has to**
50. You …………… phone me when you arrive at home but I hope you will.
a) need to **b) haven't got to** **c) don't need** **d) have to**
51. The baby is asleep, you …………… shout like that.
a) needn't **b) should** **c) mustn't** **d) ought to**
52. My mother gave me a present for my son, I …… forget to give it to him.
a) mustn't **b) don't have to** **c) have got to** **d) had better**
53. There was nobody to help me. I …………… do everything by myself.
a) must **b) shouldn't** **c) had to** **d) has to**
54. I'm not working tomorrow, so I ………… get up early.
a) need to **b) won't have to** **c) will have to** **d) must**
55. Steve didn't know how to turn off the computer, so I ……… show him.
a) need to **b) had to** **c) have** **d) didn't have to**
56. Excuse me a moment - I ………… make a phone call. I won't be long.
a) have got **b) haven't got to** **c) mustn't** **d) need**
57. I couldn't find the street I wanted. I………ask somebody for directions.
a) must **b) should** **c) had to** **d) has to**
58. It's a No parking area. You …………… park your car here.
a) needn't **b) need** **c) don't have** **d) mustn't**
59. A man was injured in the accident, but he …………go. to hospital because it wasn't serious.
a) had to **b) didn't have to** **c) will have to** **d) must**
60. When Maher starts his new job next month, he………..travel 50 miles to work every day.
a) have got **b) will have to** **c) mustn't** **d) doesn't need**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Egypt is famous since ancient times for its curative tourism which treats many diseases.

(a) تشتهر مصر منذ القدم بسياحتها العلاجية التى تعالج الكثير من الأمراض .
(b) مصر مشهورة لأنه فى العصور القديمة كانت السياحة تعالج كثيرا من الأمراض.
(c) تشتهر مصر منذ القدم بعلاج السياحة وعلاج الكثير من الأمراض .
(d) مصر مشهورة بالسياحة العلاجية منذ العصور القديمة التى عالجت كثيرا من الأمراض.

2-Since you are ill, I'll ask someone else to clean the upstairs.

(a) منذ أنك مريض، وأنا سأطلب من شخص آخر تنظيف الطابق العلوى .
(b) منذ أنك مريض، سأطلب من شخص آخر تنظيف الطوابق العلوية .
(c) بما أنك مريض، سأطلب من شخص آخر تنظيف الطابق العلوى .
(d) بما أنك مريض، سأطلب من شخص آخر غسيل الطوابق العلوية.

3-A good role model serves as an example for inspiring and motivating us to work hard to uncover our true inner potentials.

(a) يعد القدوة الجيدة مثالا يلهمنا ويحفزنا على العمل الجاد للكشف عن إمكاناتنا الداخلية الحقيقية.
(b) يعتبر دور النموذج الجيد مثالا يلهمنا ويحفزنا على العمل الجاد لمعرفة إمكاناتنا الداخلية الحقيقية.
(c) يعد النموذج دورا جيداً يلهمنا ويحفزنا على العمل الجاد لمعرفة طاقاتنا الداخلية الحقيقية.
(d) يعد القدوة دورا جيداً يلهمنا ويمكننا من العمل الجاد لمعرفة طاقاتنا الداخلية الصادقة.

4-The policies, plans and development works of the nation can be best implemented by youth.

(a) يمكن أن ينفذ الشباب الخطط السياسية وأعمال التنمية فى البلاد على أفضل وجه .
(b) يمكن أن ينفذ الشباب سياسات وخطط التنمية والأعمال فى البلاد على أكمل وجه .
(c) يمكن أن ينفذ الشباب سياسات وخطط وأعمال التنمية فى البلاد على أفضل وجه .
(d) يمكن أن يطبق الشباب سياسات البلاد وخطط التنمية والأعمال على أحسن حال.

5-As it is a free-smoking area, you mustn't smoke here.

(a) على الرغم من أنها منطقة يسمح فيها بالتدخين، يجب عليك ألا تدخن هنا.
(b) لأنها منطقة خالية من التدخين، يجب عليك ألا تدخن هنا.
(c) وكأنها منطقة يسمح فيها بالتدخين، ولكن يجب عليك ألا تدخن هنا.
(d) مع أنها منطقة يسمح فيها بالتدخين، يجب عليك ألا تدخن هنا.

6-Man has invented numerous things to make his life comfortable and entertaining.

(a) اخترع الإنسان أشياء عديدة ليجعل حياته مريحة ومسلية .
(b) اخترع الإنسان أشياء مسلية ليجعل حياته مريحة ومتنوعة .
(c) اخترع الإنسان أشياء مفيدة ليجعل حياته مريحة ومضيافة .
(d) اخترع الإنسان أشياء فعالة ليجعل حياته مريحة وسهلة.

Unit 2

Eating Around the world

amount (n)	كمية	preparation(n)	تجهيز\تحضير	pot(n)	قدر
celebrate (v)-ed	يحتفل	prepare	يجهز	personally(adj)	شخصيا
celebrations (n)	احتفال	serve (v)-ed	يقدم طعام- شراب	dessert(n)	التحلية
eat out(v)	يتناول طعام بالخارج	service	الخدمة فى المطعم	old-fashioned	موضة قديمة
get together	يتجمع \يلتقى	traditional (adj)	تقليدى	dish(n)	طبق
occasion (n)	مناسبة	traditions	تقاليد	eggah(n)	أكلة العجة المصرية
a turkey(n)	ديك رومى	Japanese (n)	يابانى	Egyptian food (n)	الطعام المصرى
beef(n	لحم بقري	lunchtime(n)	وقت الغداء	excerpt(n)(v)	مقتبس\يقتبس
belief(n)	اعتقاد\رأى	mochi(n)	كيكة الأرز اليابانى	expect (v) –ed	يتوقع
bowl(n)	سلطانية	nasi goring (n)	وجبة الأرز باللحم والخضار فى اندونيسيا	extract(n)	استخراج
chopsticks(n)	عودان للأكل الصينى	particular(adj)	خاص	fatta(n)	اكلة الفتة المصرية
cornbread(n)	خبز الذرة	personal(adj)	شخصى	foreigner	اجنبى
curry(n)	الكارى (بهارات)	old-fashioned	موضة قديمة	ful medames	فول مدمس
customer(n)	زبون\عميل	oyster(n)	محار البحر	gather(v)\-ed	يجمع
delicious (adj)	لذيذ	nasi goring	وجبة الأرز باللحم والخضار فى اندونيسيا	Indonesian(adj)	اندونيسى
Mexican(adj)	مكسيكى	personally(adj)	شخصيا	Italian(adj)	ايطالى
sweet potatoes(n)	بطاطا	rude(adj)	وقح	products(n)	منتجات
thanksgiving day(n)	عيد الشكر	seafood(n)	مأكولات بحرية	pumpkin pie(n)	فطيرة اليقطين\قرع العسل
vertically(adv)	عموديا	special(adj)	خاص	questionnaire(n)	استبيان\استفتاء
whatever(pronoun)	ايا كان	spoon(n)	ملعقة	relatives(n)	اقارب
worry about(v)-ed	يقلق على	survive(v)	ينجو\يبقى على قيد الحياة	native Americans(n)	سكان امريكا الأصليين
American cookies(n)	بسكويت امريكى	oyster(n)	محار البحر	noodles(n)	شعرية صينى
changes(n)	تغيرات	remember(v)-ed	يتذكر	thinking(n)	التفكير
cruel(adj)	قاسى	repeat(v)_ed	يكرر	thought(n)	اعتقاد
difficult(adj)	صعب	repetition(n)	تكرار	understand (v)	يفهم
exactly(adj)	تماما\بالضبط	simple(adj)	بسيط	welcome(n/v)	يرحب\ترحيب
French(adj)	فرنسى	smell(n)(v)-ed	رائحة\يشم	whale	حوت
grapes(n)	عنب	snack(n)	وجبة خفيفة	midnight(n)	منتصف الليل
herring	سمكة الرنجة	takeaway(n)	طعام جاهز	options(n)	خيارات
jar(n)	اناء\جرة	tamales(n)	وجبة اللحم المكسيكى	the countryside(n)	الريف

Definitions

amount (n)	كميه	-a quantity of something. -how much of something there is.
celebrate (d) (n)	يحتفل-يحي مناسبه	-do something fun to show that an event is special.
eat out	يأكل خارج المنزل	-have a meal outside your home
get together	يلتقي	-meet people and spend time with them. -meet with other people.
occasion (n)	مناسبه	a time when something special happens.
option (n)	خيار -بديل	-a choice you can make in a particular situation.
personal (adj)	شخصي	-belonging or relating to one person rather than to other people or to people in general.
prepare (ed) (v)	يعد – يجهز	-get something ready to eat or use.
serve (d) (v)	يخدم	-give someone food or drinks as part of a meal.
simple (adj)	بسيط	-not difficult or complicated to do understand.
traditional (adj)	تقليدي	-old ways of doing things that don't change. -following a way of doing something that has existed for a long time.

Antonyms

optional	اختيارى	compulsory	اجبارى
difficult	صعب	easy	سهل\بسيط
native	اصلى	foreigner	اجنبى
heavy	ثقيل	light	خفيف
personal	شخصى	general	عام
respect	يحترم	disrespect	يزدرى

Synonyms

confused	متحير	puzzled	
traditional	تقليدى	conventional	old fashioned
personal	شخصى	private	
heavy	قوى	strong	forceful
strong	حار	spicy	
respect	يحترم	obey\follow\regard	

1- -Really this meal has a strong taste. The word strong is the synonym of………..

a-weak b-forceful c-spicy

2- -respect to obey is personal to……………..

a-general b-local c-private

3- -people who ……………..law must be punished.

a-disrespect b-obey c-respect

4- -it's not a simple problem .it's a ………………one.

a-easy b-complicated c-different

5- -I don't like …………………meals but light ones.

a-strong b-overweight c-heavy

prepositions

decide on	يحدد	belong to	يخص
choose from	يختار من بين	add to	يضيف
catch up with	يلحق ب \ يواكب	dig…..out of	يستخلص
find out	يكتشف	wait for	ينتظر
think of\about	يفكر فى	come from	يأتى من

-complete with prepositions:

1- -you should add some spices ……………this food.

2- -I have found ………………a lot about this issue.

3- -I have waited ……………him a lot.

4- -can you choose the best one ………………these students.

Derivatives

verbs		nouns		adjectives	
believe	يعتقد	Belief/ believer	اعتقاد/معتقد	**believable**	قابل للتصديق
bore	يمل	boredom	ملل	**boring**	ممل
complicated	يعقد	complication	تعقيد	**complicated**	معقد
confuse	يربك	confusion	ارتباك	**confused** **confusing**	مرتبك مربك
respect	يحترم	respect	احترام	**respected**	محترم
celebrate	يحتفل	celebration celebrating	احتفال	**celebrated** **celebratory**	شخص مشهور احتفالى

foods

dessert	حلوى	**pumpkin**	نبات يقطين
sea foods	مأكولات بحرية	**prawns**	جمبرى كبير
shellfish	صدفيات	**crimps**	جمبرى صغير
grapes	عنب	**herring**	الرنجة
lamb	لحم ضانى	**turkey**	ديك رومى
nasigoreng	نازى جورينج"اسم اكله"	**nuts**	مكسرات
pasta	مكرونة	**snack**	وجبة خفيفة
sweet potato	بطاطا	**tamales**	تماليس وجبة مكيسكية
cookies	بسكويت	**curry**	كارى
chips	بطاطس شيبسي	**beef**	لحم بقرى
mochi	موتشى "حلوى يابانية"	**pie**	فطيرة

Language Notes

event – accident – incident

event حدث
incident حدث خلال فيلم\مسلسل \مباراة\مسرحية
accident حادث تصادم

1. is an important ……………… حفل تتويج the coronation
   a-event **b-incident** **c-accident**
2. -the film is full of ………………
   a-events **b-incidents** **c-accidents**

occasion - opportunity

On \occasion احتفال\مناسبه اجتماعية
opportunity فرصة – فرصة عمل
- ***miss opportunity** يفوت ***attend occasion** يحضر مناسبة

1. youth search for any ……………..,they need jobs.-
   a-events b-**opportunity** c-occasion
2. -Thanksgiving day is a day ………….to see their close friends.
   a-event b-incident c-**occasion**

public - general

public يستخدمه كل الناس **general** يعرفه كل الناس

-I like to go to (general-**public**) libraries.
-This is a (public –**general**) idea all people know it.

Personal - private

personal شخصي يخص الشخص
private شخصى يخص الشخص –مملوك – مدفوع فيه **مال**

1- -this is my (personal-private –**a&b**) life .Don't interfere.
2- -The fees of (personal-**private**) lessons are high.
3- This is my (personal-**private**) car

-بعض الملاحظات القواعديه الزائده على الوحده:

Let - allowed

-let مفعول inf **-allow مفعول to + inf**
-be let/ allowed to +inf **-allow V-ing**

1- -He let Mona (**leave**- to leave) early.
2- -He allowed Mona (leave- **to leave**) early.
3- -Hala was let (**to leave** – leave) early.

ولا يفضل استخدام let في المبني المجهول والافضل allowed

-Rana was (let- **allowed**) to leave early.

حذف رابط الوصل

Who – which – that + فعل مبني للمعلوم=v-ing
Who- which- that + be + p.p (مبني للمجهول) =p.p
Who plays = playing **that grows =growing**
-who is called = called **-which is produced = produced**

-My friend (who called – **called**) Alaa helped me a lot.
-The man (who driving- **driving**) the car is my uncle.

else

نري كلمه else في ثلاث مواضع:

1 -بعد ادوات الاستفهام :

who else	**ايضا**	**what else**	**ايضا ا**
where else	**ايضا**		

2-بعد اي صيغه فيها **Some – no – any**
Some else -anyone else – nothing else

3 - مع تركيبه Or else والا:

1- -I must study, or (other- **else**) I will fail.
2- -I didn't deceive you, someone (other – **else**) did that.
3- -A: My uncle and his wife will come? B: Who (other- **else**)?

The +جنسيه

The +اسم جنسيه = الشعب
The British = British people **The Spanish = Spanish people**
The Egyptian = Egyptian people
The Egyptian الشعب المصري the Egyptians المصريين

Other / others

other + اسم لا يعد **other + اسم يعد جمع**
another + one **another + اسم جمع + عدد**
another = few + اسم جمع **others + فعل**

-Some people like fish but (other – **others**) don't.
-Some students like Mr. Nasr but (**other** – others) students don't. It's human nature.
-I had a cup of tea, can you fetch me (other- **another**) one.
-I need to see (**another**- other) two shirts.

☺ملاحظه خفيفه للطلبه الظريفه:

Other + جمع = others
-These shirts are not nice, can you show me any (**other** – others) ones.
-These shirts are not nice, can you show me ant (other – **others**) لاحظ عدم وجود اسم
The other one - another one **لاحظ اننا نقول**
Some other + اسم **each other**
-They must help each (**other** – others- another).

-I want to see (**other**- another) one.

Like

Like يحب - يفضل like = for example مثل
Like (adj) = similar to مشابه لـــ - مثل
Alike (adj) = similar متشابه
like + اسم alike + لا يأتي بعدها اسم

1) -I (**like** – alike) my toy very much.
2) -Mona is (**like**- alike) Sarah, she is polite.
3) -I have a lot of polite students (**like**- alike) Alaa and Enjy.
4) -Basant and Nehad are (like- **alike**) they're polite.

لا تنسي التعبير الاتي:

-What is the weather like? ما هي حاله الطقس؟
-I leant out of the window to see what the weather was like.

Like مثل unlike بخلاف

-(Alike – **Unlike**) Marwa, her mother is short.

Look like يشبه =resemble = take after

-Really Ahmed and Ramy (like- **look like**) each other.

Don't get confused

optional	اختيارى	**free**	حر\مجانى \غير مشغول
serve	يحترم –يقدم طعام	**surf**	يركب \الامواج يتصفح على النت
grilled	مشوى	**fried**	مقلى
serve	يقدم – يخدم	**service**	خدمه - يخدم
get over	يتغلب علي	**get together**	يتقابل
amount	معدل كميه	**number**	عدد
eat out	يأكل خارج المنزل	**find out**	يكتشف
dish	وجبه	**plate**	طبق
stupid	غبي	**curious**	محب للاستطلاع
old-fashioned	ذات طراز قديم	**fashionable**	علي الموضه
person	شخص	**personality**	شخصيه
serve	يقدم – يخدم	**service**	خدمه - يخدم
get over	يتغلب علي	**get together**	يتقابل
amount	معدل كميه	**number**	عدد
eat out	يأكل خارج المنزل	**find out**	يكتشف
dish	وجبه	**plate**	طبق
stupid	غبي	**curious**	محب للاستطلاع
old-fashioned	ذات طراز قديم	**fashionable**	علي الموضه

person	شخص	personality	شخصيه

Expressions & collocations

get confused	يرتبك	spend time with	يقضى وقتا مع
get together	يتقابل	take place	يحدث
get on	يركب وسيلة	serve food	يقدم طعام
fall asleep	ينام	show respect	يظهر احترام
feel sleep	يشعر بالنعاس	make a pumpkin pie	يعد فطيرة اليقطين
go /travel abroad	يسافر	make noise	يحدث ضوضاء
feel hungry	يشعر بالجوع	make a choice	يختار
feel happy	يشعر بالسعادة	work in a buffet	يعمل فى بوفيه\مقصف
Feel sad	يشعر بالحزن	have whatever you like	تأخذ ما تريد
grow food	يزرع محاصيل	do something	يقوم بعمل شئ
make a difference	يحدث تغيير	a bit worried about	قلق قلقا قليلا
bring good luck	يجلب الحظ السعيد	In different colours	بألوان مختلفة
at all	على الأطلاق	distant past events	احداث الماضى البعيد
at least	على الأقل	on different occasions	فى مناسبات مختلفة
on the menu	فى القائمة	in general	عامة
keep out of the way	يبتعد عن الطريق		

1) when I met my boss I …………confused.
a-am b-made c-got

2) -when she was watching the match ,she………asleep.
a-feel b-fall c-fell

3) -He ………………abroad to meet the delegation.
a-came b-went c-become

4) -Dr.Magdi yacoub ………………a lot of differences to people's lives.
a-made b-did c-came

5) -can you …………………nasi goring.
a-do b-have c-make

6) -Waiters in this restaurant……………food well.
a-save b-safe c-serve

7) -My students always ……………respect to me everywhere.
a-do b-show c-make

8) -My dad …………a lot of kinds of food on his farm.
a-grows b-goes c-does

9) -when will the party …………….place.
a-have b-takes c-take

10) -I don’t like meat …………….all.
a-of b-in c-at

11) -…………general, he is cooperative.
a-of b-in c-on

12) -I can't choose any food ……………….this menu.
a-on b-of c-by

13) -he was……………. worried when his sister didn’t come.
a-abet b-bit c-a bit

Reading

Tamales

It is a Mexican **dish** of **seasoned** **meat** **wrapped** in **cornmeal** **dough** and **steamed** or **baked** in corn **husks**. It can also be made from meat, cheese and vegetables that are **cooked** inside banana **leaves**.

هو طبق مكسيكي من اللحم المتبل الملفوف في رقائق نشا الذرة ويطهي علي البخار او في قشور الذرة كما يمكن صنعه من اللحوم والجبن والخضراوات المطهيه داخل اوراق الموز.

Scottish Herring

A **herring** is a **silvery** fish that is most **abundant** in **coastal** waters and is of great **commercial** **importance** as a food in many parts of the world. In Scotland, they put the fish in a **jar** with water, **onions** and sugar for at **least** five days before it is **served**.

الرنجه هي سمكه فضيه تتواجد بكثره في المياه الساحليه ولها اهميه تجاريه كبيره كغذاء في اجزاء كثيره من العالم. في اسكتلندا، ويتم وضع الرنجه في برطمان به ماء وبصل وسكر لمده خمسه ايام علي الاقل قبل تقديمه.

Spring rolls

It is a Chinese **snack** **consisting** **of** rice paper **filled** with **minced** vegetables and usually meat, **rolled** **into** a **cylinder** and **fried**.

انها وجبه صينيه خفيفه تتكون من رقائق ارز محشو بالخضار المفرومه واللحوم عاده ملفوفه في اسطوانه وتقلي.

Reading text:

An Old-Fashioned Thanksgiving

In September 1620, a ship **called** the Mayflower arrived in North America with 102 passengers. Many died, but some **were able to grow** food and **survive** with help from **Native** Americans.

Thanksgiving is a day when families **get together** to remember these **events**. It is **celebrated** in the U S A every year on the fourth Thursday in November.

In 1882, Louisa M. Alcott wrote a short story **called** An **old**-fashioned **Thanksgiving**. Here is an **extract**.

When they woke, there was still a large **amount** of snow **outside**. Tilly made a good breakfast for the seven children.

“Now, about dinner,” she said as they all finished eating. “Ma said that we could have **whatever** we **liked**, but she didn’t **expect** us to have a **traditional** thanksgiving dinner.”

Have you ever cooked a **turkey**? Asked Roxy ma said I should decide what to do, replied Tilly. All you children have to do is **keep out of** the way, and let Prue and me work.”

The younger children **walked out of** the kitchen and **into** another room. As Tilly and Prue started to prepare the big meal. They got out all the **spoons**, **dishes**, **pots** and **pans** that they could find.

“Now, sister, we all have **dinner at** five, “said Tilly, Pa will be here by that time and he’ll be **surprised to** find us **ready to** serve the food. There’s such a lot to do and I’m a bit **worried about** the turkey. It’s so big”

“I know.” Said Prue. “ I fed it all summer and now it will **feed** me. “she **laughed**.

New Year Celebrations around the World

As one year changes to the next, many countries around the world choose to celebrate the start of the New Year with special food. However, different things to enjoy the occasion.

In Mexico, for example, many people eat out at the many restaurants around the country on New Year's Day. The most popular dish is always tamales, which is made from meat, cheese and vegetables that are cooked inside banana leaves.

However, when the New Year arrives in Japan, people make special little cakes from sweet rice. Then they get together with their family and friends to eat them and celebrate.

In Spain, it is traditional to eat twelve grapes to welcome the New Year. The Spanish people eat this particular amount of grapes late at night, when the clock reaches midnight or twelve o'clock and they have one grape for each hour of the clock.

In Poland, people start to prepare a fish called herring at least five days before they eat it. They put the fish in a jar with water, onions and sugar and then they wait for the big day.

Finally, in Greenland, it is traditional for the men to serve a special meal of whale for women to enjoy. It takes months for the meat to become ready to eat and p say the smell is very strong.

Showing respect while having meals

1-. Personally, I think it's important to respect our older relatives. When South Korean families eat together, the oldest person at the table always starts to eat first. The rest of the family waits until this person has finished eating before they finish their meals. It is believed that this shows your respect for the most important people in your family.

2-. As you probably know, people in China usually use chopsticks to eat their food. However, you need to be careful about what you do with them when you're eating there. It is considered very rude to put your chopsticks vertically into your bowl of food. For example, I understand that this is a Chinese tradition, but for me, foreigners who do this don't mean to be rude at all.

3-. In my opinion, lunchtime isn't the best time of day for eating a large meal. However, in Russia it is thought that people should eat their largest meal of the day between 1 o'clock and 3 o'clock in the afternoon. In the evening, people usually eat some light food, such as bread and cold meat followed by tea. This is a traditional way of eating in Russia.

Writing a professional questionnaire

When you write a questionnaire, the type of questions you use in important. The questions should use simple language and shouldn't be difficult to understand. You

don't need to repeat the question. Don't give too many options as this will confuse people. And never ask **personal** questions. People **generally** won't to answer these. Ask one thing **at** a time. **Make sure** you don't have two questions in one. For example, "Do you go abroad often with your friends" And don't ask about things which happened a long time in the past. It can be difficult for people to remember. When you are ready, **decide on** the best time to ask your questions. before people start to **forget**!

What do people eat for breakfast in your country?

Adam: As your probably know, people eat very different things **for** breakfast around the world.
Shady: Yes, they do. In my opinion, breakfast is the **best meal of** the day. What do people eat in other countries?
Adam: Let's start the UK. It is thought that the British have the most **unhealthy traditional breakfast**. They have **fried eggs**, **beans** , **toast** and **fried meat**.
Shady: **Personally**, I wouldn't want to eat such a big meal in the morning. What about the French?
Adam: I understand that? The French have a much **smaller breakfast**: just a **croissant** or **piece** of **bread**.
Shady: That **sounds** nice, but for me, I'm happy with my **usual breakfast** of **bread**, **cheese** and **an egg**! One piece of **bread** would be too little.

Listening Text

A Thanksgiving invitation

Amy: So did you ask **parents** about visiting our home for **Thanksgiving**. Huda?
Huda: Yes, They like me to **try new** things and they thought it would be a great idea. My mum was very **curious about** the food you eat.
Amy: You'll love the food at Thanksgiving. Huda. Have you had **turkey** before? It's a lot like **chicken** but it's very big.
Huda: Well, I like chicken, so that should be **okay**. What **else** do you have?
Amy: We have a special kind of bread, called **cornbread**. It's **delicious**. And we have **sweet potatoes**. They're like normal **potatoes**, but much **nicer**.
Huda: That sounds great. What do you have for **dessert**?
Amy: Mu mum makes the most wonderful **pumpkin pie**. It's very **sweet** and heavy. Sometimes I fall **asleep** after I eat it , so I'll try not to eat too much.
Huda: Now. I'm feeling hungry.
Amy: Me too. But the best thing about thanksgiving is that we all have to help with the cooking. It's a great time to **meet** and **catch up with** friends and family. That's why we're all really looking forward to **seeing** you.
Huda: Great. I can't wait!

Meals from around the world

Nasi goreng

Nasi goreng is a meal with **rice** from **Indonesia**. In fact, the words "**Nasi goreng**" mean **fried rice** in Indonesia. Many people believe that Nasi goreng is one of **spiciest** meals in Indonesia , but for most people it's simply the best meal you can eat. Nasi goreng is made by **frying rice** and **adding vegetables** and either **chicken** or **prawns** to the **pan**. It's a bit **saltier** that some other Indonesian meals and it often comes with a **fried** egg on top. Nasi goreng is usually cheaper than most **other meals** in Indonesia. You can get it either in restaurant or from people who cook food on the side of the road.

Oysters

Oysters are a type of **shellfish** that people **dig out** of the earth under the sea. They're **rarer** than most other types of seafood and you can **only eat** them for seven months of the year. During these months. Thousands of **oysters** are eaten in France because many people believe they're one of the most special food you can eat. This means that **oysters** are usually one of the most **expensive** meals on the menu in French restaurants.

Mochi

Mochi are sweet, round rice cakes which are smaller than most of the cakes people eat. They look like little balls and they're made in many different colours. In Japan, where they come from, mochi are the most popular type of cake and the Japanese eat large amounts of them. Mochi were first made about one thousand year ago and people thought that they brought good luck. Today, different colours and types of mochi are more popular that others on different special occasions, for example, when the Japanese celebrate New Year's Day, flat, white mochi is the most popular type of mochi to eat.

Food in the UK

the UK did not used to be known for its good food, but it has got a lot better in recent years. Probably the most popular dish is fish and chips. The fish and potatoes are fried and they usually very salty. Fish and chips is usually cheaper that most other takeaway food, too. The British also like spicy food Indian. Food is usually the spiciest and Indian restaurants are very popular.

one of the most traditional dishes in the UK is most lamb. **What** people often eat for Sunday lunch with potatoes and vegetables. The British also like a lot of sweet things such as ice cream. In 2018, the British ate more than 320,000 ice cream. They mostly eat ice cream in the summer when the weather is hotter.

Tips on Writing a questionnaire

when you're writing a questionnaire, you need to ask the right questions. Some

questions are a lot more useful than others. And, very often small changes to a questionnaire can make a lot of difference.
Firstly, it's important that the questions are easy to understand, so it's always helpful to use simple language. If you use complicated language, people will need to read or hear the questions two or three times.
Secondly, it's important to use words with clear meanings. Words like "most" and "many" different things to different people. So, use words that are easier to understand, such as "almost all" and "almost none instead.
Thirdly, don't have too many options. People get confused when there are more than six options to choose from.

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer

1. ………………………………… is a quantity of something

a- Amount **b- A mount** **c- mount** **d- mounted**

2. To do something fun to show that an event is special is to …………….

a-certify **b- collaborate** **c- celebrate** **d- corticated**

3. To.........................is to have a meal outside the home

a-eat up **b-eat out** **c- eat away** **c- eat in**

4. To meet people and spend time with them is to ……………

a- Get together **b- get in** **c- get up** **d- get away**

5. .... is a time when something special happens.

a- An Occasion **b- A chance** **c-An opportunity** **d- A coincidence**

6. To …………………………is to get something ready to eat or use.

a-Prepare **b- precede** **c- prepend** **d- present**

7. To Give people food and drink is to ……………………………..

a- Serf **b- surf** **c- Serve** **d- serpent**

8. ………………………means old ways of doing things that don't change.

a- untraditional **b- traditional** **c- tragedy** **d- traditions**

9. she was ………………………….. at the limit of her patience.

a-The right **b- a right** **c- on the right of** **d- rightly**

10. Everyone ……………………… the right to say no or yes.

a- have **b- has** **c- is** **d- are**

11. Kareem is careful ………………… his reputation.

a- in **b- of** **c- at** **d- on**

12. As a teacher he was highly ……………………….. for his industry and patience.

a- respected **b- respectful** **c- respectable** **d- respect**

13. Ali's loyalty to his friends had made him ……………………… lies.

a- say **b- mention** **c- tell** **d- make**

14. he lies ………………………..her about his work and age.

a- On **b- to** **c- for** **d- by**

15. His solicitor was sent …………………… by the security guards.

a- in **b- on** **c- about** **d- away**

16. she has written for the……………………., television, and film.

a- siege **b- sag** **c- stage** **d- movie**

17. She likes to involve herself in every ………………… of the film-making process.
a-stage b- time c- branch d- way
18. There are plenty of options for vegetarians …………………….. our menu.
a- in b- onto c- by d- on
19. the crew were busily …………………….. ready for the departure.
a- Doing b- setting c- making d- having
20. She wasn't worried …….. the fact that her daughter might be affected the future because her parents were divorced.
a- On b- in b- by d- about
21. Visitors will be able ………………… some of the articles on display.
a-of buying b- to buy c- buy d- for buying
22. …………………………., I think it is important to make a study plan.
A-Personal b- personnel c- In person d- personality
23. Policy-makers should listen to popular opinion before making decisions .
a- popularity b- publicity c- popular d- popularized
24. Her favourite ……………………… is roast chicken.
a- Plate b- dish c- dash c- course
25. They aim to become slimmer by following a ………………
a- meal b- dietitian c- diet d- regime
26. I've lost the money - I'm in the ………………………………
a- Soap b- soup c- sob d- scoop
27. In the afternoon, one guest said, the bride was ……………. and brought to the party.
a- coming b- going c- getting d- fetched
28. This woman is exceptional, she's …., she's extraordinary and I have great respect for her.
a-private b- especially c- special d- specialist
29. He is strongly associated with Cambridge, but his ……………… city is London.
a-National b- local c- nationality d- native
30. There they fell asleep and slept peacefully, as lovers did when they were together.
a- Filled b- fell c- dropped d- flew
32. She began her own business with the ………………… she got from her grandfather.
a-Heritage b- heiress c- heredity d- inheritance
33. There was no denying that dog is …………………… to his master
a- loyalty b- disloyal c- liability d-loyal
34. Please, use the emergency ………………… in case of fire.
a-outlet b- excite c- exit d- exited
35. Mr. Ahmed Attia did not buy his house. It was …………………from his parents.
a- heritage b- heredity c- an inheritance d- heir
36. My younger brother always tells the…………….He never lies.
a-Truth b- true c- real d- reality
37. It is natural to feel……….sometimes, but it is important to learn to control it.
a- huger b- hungry c- anger d- banger
38. We really wanted to climb the mountain, and we all felt very happy when we…….. .
a- Fail b- fell c- filled d- succeeded
39. The man in the market says that all his watches are new, but I don't………him. I think they are all quite old.
a- see b- rustle c- trust d- trustee

40. Do you think that………is the most important quality that a best friend can show you?
a-loyal b- disloyal c- disloyalty d- loyalty
41. My grandmother had a small………as a cleaner, but she never had very much money.
a- outcome b-come in c- overcome d- income
42. This email asking for money says it is from the bank, but I think it is trying to……us.
a-take up b- deceive c- deceit d- decent
43. You can go into the building one way and……………. through a different door.
a-exist b- exegete c- exaggerate d- exit

Translate into Arabic:

1-We should increase the cultivated land area in Egypt and grow more crops. Food shortage is a problem that is facing many countries now. That's why we must make a plan to avoid famines.

……………………………………………………………………………..……………

……………………………………………………………………………..……………

2-Most young people today are substandard in culture and knowledge. TV took us away from reading and attending lectures and symposia. Our educational system doesn't develop the creative and intellectual faculties.

……………………………………………………………………………..……………

……………………………………………………………………………..……………

Translate into English:

1) ان مصر الان في حاجه ماسه لمزيد من الجهود والتعاون والتضحيه لاستعادة مكانتها في المنطقه

. ……………………………………………………………………………..……………

……………………………………………………………………………..……………

2) العلم والمعرفه هما اساس تقدم اي دوله

. ……………………………………………………………………………..……………

……………………………………………………………………………..……………

Adjective الصفه

الصفه هي كلمه تصف الاسم سواء كان شخص او نبات او حيوان او شيء.

-اين نري الصفه؟

1-قبل الاسم:

-I met a polite girl. -They are great projects.

2- بعد To be:

-Rana is intelligent. -The building was huge.

3- بعد افعال الحواس Smell, taste, feel, look , seem

- -That doesn't seem nice.
- -He looks sad today.
- -I feel happy today.
- -This food tastes delicious.
- -Really the soup smells nice.

4-بعد افعال آخري

Become- turn- go- grow- get- fall

1) -During the match he fell asleep.
2) -His face become angry yesterday.
3) -The dog went mad.
4) -It turned windy yesterday.

☺ ملحوظه خفيفه للطلبه الظريفه:

1-هناك بعض الاسماء لا تقبل الصفه قبلها ولكن الصفه بعدها وهي الكلمات التي تحتوي علي :

Some – any – every – no

-I search for (**anyone tall** – tall anyone) here .

-I want to rest (**somewhere quieter**- quiet somewhere).

2-هناك بعض الصفات لا تقبل اسم بعدها:

alive – alike – asleep- alone- afraid

-He is alive. صحيح -He is alive person. (x) لا يجوز ان نقول

3-كثيرا ما نجد صفات تنتهي بـ ——— v-ing / ed

وهي صفات تصف الذي وقع عليه الحدث **(ed)**

وهي صفات تصف ما يسببه الحدث **(v-ing)**

amazed	مندهش	**amazing**	مدهش
surprised	مندهش	**surprising**	مدهش
disappointed	محبط	**disappointing**	محبط
interested	مهتم	**interesting**	شيق

Test yourself

-I met some …………….in the street yesterday.

a-rude **b-rude boys** **c-boys rude**

2-His car was…………….when I saw him.

a-A beautiful **b-beautifully** **c-beautiful**

3-During the match she…………asleep.

a-filled **b-fell** **c-failed**

4-When the light went out it went……………..

a-dark **b-a dark** **c-darkness**

5-When she succeeded, she looked………………

a-happily **b-happy** **c-happiness**

6-Mohamed was……………when the other player kicked the ball.

a-amaze **b-amazing** **c-amazed**

7-Mohamed Salah was…………..in his play in the last match.

8-The match was……………I really enjoyed my time.

a-excite **b-exciting** **c-excited**

Comparative adjectives
صفات المقارنه

-قبل ان نبدأ في صفات المقارنه لابد ان نقول ان الكلمه عباره عن مقاطع وعدد مقاطع الكلمه هو نفس عدد الاصوات المتحركه في الكلمه مثل:

-مقطع واحد:

Hot-short – thin- big- tall

-مقطعين:

Peaceful- dangerous- wonderful – cheerful

-عندما نقوم بالمقارنه بين طرفين:

-اذا كانت الصفه مكونه من مقطع واحد نضع **Less than / er…….than**

Taller than - hotter than - bigger than
Less tall than - less hot than

-اذا كانت الصفه مكونه من اكثر من مقطع نضعها بين:

More ……..than / less…………..than

More expensive than **less expensive than**
More beautiful than **less beautiful than**

1) -Mona is (tall- **taller**) than Rasha.
2) -Alaa is shorter (then – **than**) Israa.
3) Ali is (fat- fater- **fatter**) than me.

Superlative adjectives

-عند تفضيل شخص او شئ عن بقيه اشياء:

-اذا كانت الصفه ذات مقطع واحد:

The الصفه **est** **the least +** الصفه

The tallest the least tall
The fattest the least fat

-اذا كانت الصفه مكونه من اكثر من مقطع:

The most + الصفه **the least +** الصفه

The most expensive the least expensive
The most beautiful the least beautiful

1. -Ramy is the (taller- **tallest**) boy in the class.

2. -Soha is (**the** – a – an) most beautiful girl in the class.
3. -Seham is the (more- **most**) intelligent girl in the class.
4. -Seif is the (more- **least**) tall in the class.

As ______ as

وتستخدم هذه التركيبه عند تساوي الصفات ونضع بينها الصفه بدون اضافه:

as tall as	the same height
as old as	the same age
as fast as	the same speed
as heavy as	the same weight
as beautiful as	the same beauty
as long as	the same length
as deep as	the same depth
as high as	the same height
as popular as	the same popularity
as wide as	the same width
as expensive as	the same price

-ونفى هذه الصيغه:

not as الصفه **as**
not so الصفه **as**

1) -Ramy is as tall (**as**- so) Ali.
2) -Mona is (so – **as**) careful as her sister.
3) -Walaa is as (**short**- shorter) as her mother.

صفات شاذه

adjective	comparative	superlative
good	better than	the best
well	better than	the best
bad	worse than	the worst
little	less than	the least
many/ much /a lot of	more than	the most
little	less than	the least
far	farther than /further than	the farthest /the furthest
late	later than اكثر تاخرا later الثاني	the latest الاكثر تاخرا the last الاخير

1) -Asmaa is the (better – **best**) girl in the class.
2) -Ali is (**worse**- bad) than his friend.
3) -Rania has books (many- **more**) than me.
4) -Rokia is (good- **better**) than Seham.

☺ملاحظات خفيفه للطلبه الظريفه:

1-يمكن حذف Than في صفات المقارنه:

-Today is hot but yesterday was (**hotter**- hotter than)

-Mona is good but Sara is (**better**- better than)

2-من الممكن ان تقول ان فلان اكثر من فلان بقليل او بكثير
فكيف نقول بقليل او بكثير : اننا نضع احدي الكلمات الاتيه:

a lot / much +......................er / more + صفه بكثير
a little/ a bit/ slightly +............er / more + صفه بقليل

1) -Mona is much taller than Heba. اي ان مني اطول من هبه بكثير.
2) -Mona is a little taller than Heba. اي ان مني اطول من هبه بقليل.

1) -Rania is a little (tall- **taller**) than Samia.
2) -Marwa is (**much more** – more much) careful than Heba.
3) -Arwa is (**a little** – less) shorter than her mother.

The more ....the more

كلما.................. كلما

-the more + فعل + فاعل **, the more** فعل +فاعل
-the less + فعل + فاعل **, the less** فعل + فاعل
-the.......er + فعل + فاعل **, the ...er** فعل + فاعل

-اي شيئ من الطرف الاول مع اي شيئ من الطرف الثاني:

1. -The **more** you eat , the **fatter** you become.
2. -The **less** you study, the **lower** marks you get.
3. -The **thinner** you are, the **weaker** you become.

3– عندما نريد ان نعبر عن تغيير لا نريد استخدام Than

1. -He is feeling happier now. اي اكثر سعاده من ذي قبل؟
2. -I need a bigger size. -اريد مقاس اكبر.
3. -Things have become more and more expensive. -الاشياء اصبحت اغلي واغلي.
4. -You become better and better with practice.

-تصبح افضل وافضل مع الممارسه.

as________________________as

To be / have **as** الصفه **as**
افعال الصفات **Get - become ....** **as** الصفه **as**
اي فعل اخر **As** حال **as**

-Mona is as bad as Heba.
-Rania writes as **badly** as Soha.

- -He has become as good as his friend.
- -He plays as well as his friend.

-لاحظ بعد صيغه المقارنه او المساواه:

- -He is taller than **I'm**.
- -He is taller than **me**.

The صيغه المقارنه **of the two**

- -He is the taller of the two brothers.
- -He is the tallest of the three brothers.

-ركز في السؤال:

- -Who is stranger: Ahmed or Ali?

Superlative adjectives

-يتم حذف The اذا سبقت بفعل حب او كراهيه او صفه ملكيه

- -I like my father (**most** – the most).
- -Romeo and Juliet is Shakespeare's (**best** – the best) play.
- -I like Charles Dickens especially his (**best** – the best) novel Hard times.

The nearest to الاقرب الي **the farthest from** الابعد من

-Aswan is the farthest city (of – **from**) Cairo.
-Banha is the nearest city (**to** – from) Cairo.

In / at مع الاماكن او الاسم المفرد العائد علي شئ
Of مع الفترات الزمنيه والاشخاص

- -Rana is the tallest girl in the family.
- -Merna is the tallest girl in the school.
- -Heba is the tallest girl of her sisters.

تفضيل **ever** **never** مقارنه

- -I have (ever- **never**) seen a better one than Mohamed.
- -Asmaa is the most beautiful girl I have (never- **ever**) seen.

-هناك بعض الصفات التي يجوز معاملتها معامله مقطع واحد او اثنين اي تأخذ:
most/ more ولكن الافضل **est/ most** او **more / er**
quiet - polite - rude - simple - modern- friendly

-My house is more **modern** than years.
-My house is **moderner** than yours.

مقارنه الاسماء

- **-more** اسم يعد \ لايعد **than** اكثر من
- **-fewer** اسم يعد **than** اقل من
- **-less** اسم لايعد **than** اقل من
- **-the most** + اسم يعد \ لا يعد الاكثر
- **-the fewest** + اسم يعد الاقل
- **-the least** + اسم لا يعد الاقل

- -Rabab has **more friends than** Amany.
- -Rania has **more money than** Amany.
- -Rania has **fewer books** than me.
- -Rasha has **less information** than me.
- -He the **fewest mistakes** in exercise.
- -He did the **least work** in the class.

Exercises on Grammar

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

1- This is the ………………………………………………. test I've ever taken.
a- hard **b- harder** **c- less hard** **d- hardest**

2- It was wrong ………………………………….. him to neglect his study.
a-with **b- for** **c- of** **d- to**

3- He was not ……………………………………………………….. as his colleagues.
a- less cooperative **b- as cooperative** **c- more cooperative** **d- cooperative**

4- He is not ………………………….reliable as his friend.
a-so **b- more** **c- less** **d- lessen**

5- My flat is…………………………………………….. than yours.
a- more big **b– less big** **c– the biggest** **d– bigger**

6- You didn't do as ………………………………………work as I did.
a-more **b– less** **c– least** **d– much**

7- Her friend is ……………………………………………. than her.
a- as wealthy **b– wealthiest** **c– wealthier** **d– wealthy**

8- My car is ……………………………….small than yours.
a-less **b– more** **c– least** **d– most**

9- Nobody in our company is …………………………….. Peter.
a- as efficient **b– as efficient as** **c– most efficient than** **d– efficient**

10- It was…………………………… of her to waste all her money.
a-more foolish than **b– less foolish** **c– least foolish** **d– foolish**

11- Laptops are becoming ………………………….. popular nowadays.
a-less and more **b– more and less** **c– much and more** **d– more and more**

12- She was astonished …………….some of her old friends at the party.
a- seeing **b – to see** **c– of seeing** **d– seen**

13- You shouldn't have invited John to the party. He's a ………………. man.

a- bored **b– bores** **c– boring** **d– to bore**

14- Mike has much ……………………………….money than me.

a- many **b– most** **c– the least** **d– more**

15- ……………………..people are entering the competition this year than last year.

a-A few **b– A few more** **c– Much more** **d– less**

16- The ……………………..fat you eat, the healthier you become.

a-less **b– least** **c– most** **d– much**

17- The white flower is pretty, but I think the red one is even ………………

a- most pretty **b– prettiest** **c– prettier** **d– pretty**

18- I don't read as …………………………..books as you do.

a-much **b– more** **c– most** **d– many**

19- Samah is the ……………………………student in our class.

a-intelligent **b– more intelligent** **c– less intelligent** **d– most intelligent**

20- London is ……………………………… beautiful than Amsterdam.

a-more **b– as** **c– much** **d – so**

21- The Red Sea is not …………………………big as the Mediterranean.

a-so **b– much** **c– less** **d– more**

22- Climbing is …………………………dangerous sport in the world.

a-the more **b –the less** **c- the most** **d– most**

23- The patient is ………………………………better today.

a-lightly **b– lastly** **c– slightly** **d– brightly**

24- The Nile is …………………………..river in the world.

a-the longest **b– as long as** **c– more long** **d– a longer**

25- That's the ………………………… book I've ever read. I liked it so much.

a-best **b– much** **c– least interesting** **d– most**

26- The Indian Ocean is ……………………………as the Pacific ocean.

a-more deep **b– not so deep** **c– so deep** **d– deeper**

27- Yesterday I was sick. Today I feel..........................

a-more better **b-better** **c-good** **d- as good**

28- John is ……………………… than he was yesterday.

a-more sick **b-sickest** **c-sicker** **d- much sick**

29- .The boys are ………………….. today than they were yesterday.

a- happier **b-more happy** **c- much happy** **d- happy**

30- My sister is two years ……………………… than me.

a. the youngest **b-so young** **c- younger** **d- young**

31- Do you know what ………………… animal in the world is?

a. the slowest **b-slow as** **c-slower** **d- slow**

32- I think spring is ……………………… season of the year.

a- the most beautiful **b-very beautiful** **c-more beautiful** **d- beautiful**

33- Maths is …………………. to me than biology.

a- the most important **b- so important** **c- more important** **d- important**

34- Helen is …………………… ballet dancer in our city.

a-good **b- good as** **c-better** **d- the best**

35- That test was ………………….. than the previous one last week.

a- the most difficult **b- so difficult** **c-more difficult** **d- difficult**

36- Tom has got ……………………… message from his parents.

a- the longest b-long as c-longer d- long

37- English is ……………………………. for me than Chinese.

a- the easiest b-very easy c-easier d- easy

38- My phone is …………………………. than my sister's phone.

a- the most expensive b-so expensive c-more expensive d- expensive

39- Last winter was …………………. winter in our country.

a- the coldest b- cold as c- colder d- cold

40- Ali's mobile is …………………….. than mine.

a- the most beautiful b-very beautiful c- more beautiful d- beautiful

41- This car is ……………………… car produced by this company.

a- the newest b-so new c-newer d- new

42- What continent is …………… America or Africa?

a. the largest b- very large c-larger d- large

43- Do you know who …………………….. woman in the world is?

a-fast b- so fast c-faster d- the fastest

44- Mary is ……………………………. than Ben in my class.

a-clever b- clever as c- cleverer d- the cleverest

45- Who is ………………………… runner : Tom or Sam?

a-bad b-very bad c-worse d-the worst

46- This information is ………………… for me than the previous one.

a- the most useful b- useful as c-more useful d- useful

47- When was …………………….. summer in your country?

a- the hottest b-very hot c-hotter d- hot

1- Choose the correct answer:

1. Which is the………………boys' name in your class?

a) popular b) biggest c) most popular d) population

2. This book was……………….than the last one she wrote. I didn't like it.

a) bad b) best c) worst d) worse

3. Let's……………………….together this weekend. It would be nice to see you!

a) have b) get c) make d) do

4. My mother has……………………..a delicious meal of chicken and rice.

a) prepared b) celebrated c) done d) made

5. Do you prefer sweet food like chocolate or…………food such as fish and nuts?

a) salt b) salty c) spicy d) small

6. Did you know that Indian food is one of the…………………foods in the UK?

a) most popular b) poor c) best popular d) popular

7. He is …………………of the couple .

a-tall b-taller c- tallest d- the tallest

8. He writes English better than ………………

a- I b- me c- me do d- mine

9. Manal has …………………….. money than her friend .

a- fewer b- much c- much more d- little

10. Gamal is as tall as Omar. They are of the same ……………

a- tall b- highness c- height d- weight

11. This woman is exceptional, she's ………, she's extraordinary and I have great respect for her.

a-private **b- especially** **c- special** **d- specialist**

12. He lies ………………………..her about his work and age.

a- On **b- to** **c- for** **d- by**

13. To.........................is to have a meal outside the home

a-eat up **b-eat out** **c- eat away** **c- eat in**

14. He is an idiot, he spends money like ………………………..

a- air **b- water** **c- oil** **d- noting**

15. She was in …………when she found out that she had been robbed of all her money.

a- soap **b- slippery** **c- mud** **d- soup**

16. He left for home when he finished ………………..all his work.

a- to do **b- do** **c- doing** **d- to doing**

1- Money can be used for building new Industrial plants, improving health care and solving the problems of housing and transport.

(a) يمكن استخدام الأموال لتكوين نباتات صناعية وتحسين الرعاية الصحية وحل مشاكل الإسكان والنقل .

(b) يمكن استخدام الأموال لبناء مصانع جديدة وتحسين الرعاية الصحية وحل مشاكل الإسكان والنقل .

(c) يمكن استخدام الأموال لبناء نباتات صناعية وتحسين الرعاية الصحية وحل مشاكل المنازل والنقل .

(d) يمكن أن يستخدم المال لبناء مصانع جديدة وتحسين العناية الصحية وحل مشاكل المنازل والسفر.

2-If children have good manners, they should keep quiet while grown-ups are talking.

(a) إذا كان الأطفال يتمتعون بالأخلاق الحميدة، يجب عليهم التزام الصمت أثناء حديث الكبار .

(b) لو يمتلك الأطفال طرقا جيدة، يجب عليهم التزام الهدوء عندما يكبرون ويتحدثونً.

(c) لو يمتلك الصغار عادات اجتماعية، يجب عليهم الهدوء عند الكبر والحديث مع الكبار .

(d) لو يتمتع الأطفال بالأخلاق الحميدة، يجب عليهم الهدوء ليحترمهم الكبار أثناء الحديث.

4-We are in bad need of cooperation especially these days.

(a) نحن فى حاجة ماسة إلى التعاون خاصة هذه الأيام .

(b) لقد فقدنا التعاون كثيرا خاصة هذه الأيام.

(c) التعاون بيننا سيئ جدا خاصة هذه الأيام.

(d) نحن فى احتياج سيئ إلى التعاون خاصة هذه الأيام.

Unit 3

The future of food

agriculture	الزراعة	production(n)	عملية الإنتاج	almost(adv)	تقريبا
algae	الطحلب	seaweed . (n)	عشب البحر	an introduction (n)	مقدمة
crop(n)	محصول	source(n)	مصدر	boring(adj)	ممل
earth(n)	الأرض	sustainable(adj)	مستدام	brainstorm	عصف ذهنى
innovation(n)	ابتكار	variety(n)	تنوع	chemicals(n)	كيماويات
livestock(n)	الماشية\الأنعام	explain(v)\-ed	يشرح	climate(n)	المناخ
conclusion(n)	خاتمة	organization(n)	منظمة	finally(adv)	أخيرا
continent(n)	قارة	producing(n)	انتاج	growing(n)	نمو\زيادة
create(v)d	\يخلق\ينشأ\يصنع	protect(v)\ed	يحمى	improve(v)\d	يحسن
crops(n)	محاصيل	protection(n)	حماية	increase(v)\d	يزداد
damage(v)(n)	ضرر	rainforests	غابات ممطرة	involve(v)\d	يشمل
decade(n)	عقد(10 سنوات)	real(adj)	حقيقى	mention(v)	يذكر
description(	وصف	remove(v)\d	يزيل	extraordinary	غير عادى
destroy(v)	يدمر	researcher	باحث	flat roofs(n)	اسطح مستوية
destroying(n	تدمير	scientist(n)	عالم	fresh(adj)	طازج\نقى
difference(n	الفرق	seriously(adv)	بجدية	green space(n)	مساحة خضراء
efficiently	بكفاءة	solution(n)	حل	hydroponics	الزراعة المائية
electricity(n	الكهرباء	solve(v)	يحل	local(adj)	محلى
environment	البيئة	space(n)	مساحة\فراغ\فضاء	nearly(adv)	تقريبا
evidence(n)	دليل	summary(n)	ملخص	protect(v)\-ed	يحمى
expect(v)\ed	يتوقع	technology(n)	تكنولوجيا	surprisingly	بشكل مفاجئ
factual(adj)	واقعى\حقيقى	the United Nations UN	الامم المتحدة	the Amazon rainforest(n	غابات الامازون الممطرة
farming(n)	الزراعة	weather(n)	الطقس	the government(n)	الحكومة
farmland(n)	مراعى	include(v)\d	يتضمن	tourists(n)	السياح
feed(v)	يطعم	produce(v)\-d	ينتج	urban farming(n)	الزراعة فى المدن
Antarctica	القارة القطبية الجنوبية	offer(n)	يعرض\عرض	protect(v)\-ed	يحمى
argue(v)\d	يجادل\ يناقش	persuade(v)\-d	يقنع	population	كثافة سكانية
capital city(n)	العاصمة الرئيسية	phrase(n)	عبارة	problem(n)	مشكلة
desert(n)	الصحراء	plan(v)\-ed	يخطط	encourage(v)\-d	يشجع
electric cars(n)	سيارات كهربائية	planning(n)	تخطيط	essay(n)	مقال

Definitions

agriculture	الزراعة	the practice or science of farming.
algae	الطحلب	a very simple plant without stems or leaves that grows in or near water.
crop	المحصول	a plant such as wheat , rice, or fruit that is grown by farmers and used as food.
earth	الأرض	the hard surface of the world ,as opposed to the sea or

		air.
Hydroponics	الزراعة بدون تربة	the way of growing plants without using any soil.
innovation	ابداع \ ابتكار	a new idea ,method or introduction of new things or methods.
livestock	الماشية	animals such as cows and sheep that are kept on a farm.
production	عملية الانتاج	the process of making or growing things to be sold, especially in large quantities.
seaweed	عشب البحر	a plant that grows in the sea.
source	مصدر	a thing , a place, activity etc. that you get something from
sustainable	مستدام	able to continue without causing damage to the environment.
urban farming	الزراعة فى المدن	is growing food in our cities.
variety	تنوع	the differences within a group, set of actions etc that make it interesting.

Don't forget

a link to	رابط\اتصال ب	keeping livestock	تربية الماشية
a summer job	وظيفة صيفية	learning about	التعلم عن
a talking head	متحدث فى التلفزيون	living on the earth	الحياة على كوكب الأرض
according to	وفقا ل\طبقا ل	meat production	انتاج اللحم
an expert on	خبير فى	neither of	لا هذا ولاذاك
as a result	نتيجة ل	possible solution to	حق محتمل ل
be likely to	من المحتمل	predict to+inf	يتنبأ ب
cause damage	يسبب دمار\تلف	save energy	توفير الطاقة
climate change	تغير المناخ	sea level	سطح البحر
cut down	يقطع شجرة	sources of food	مصادر الطعام
do an exam	يؤدى امتحان	special about	خاص ب
due to+(n.\v+ing)	بسبب	sustainable solutions	حلول مستدامة
electric vehicles	مركبات الكترونية	technological solutions	حلول تكنولوجية
find out	يكتشف	tell the difference	يخبر الفرق
focus on	يركز على	the flow of water	تدفق الماء
food production	انتاج الطعام	the future of farming	مستقبل الزراعة
give an opinion	يبدى رأيه	the local people	الناس المحليين
have an effect on	لديه تأثير على	the reason for	سبب ل
hope for	يأمل فى	using chemicals	استخدام المواد الكيميائية
how would you feel+v-ing?	كيف تشعر نحو	variety in the sources of	التنوع فى المصادر

I can't imagine that	لا اتخيل أن	wet places	اماكن ممطرة
in the case of	فى حالة ان	work on	يعمل على مشروع
instead of	بدلا من	working on a farm	يعمل فى مزرعة

Synonyms

negative	سلبى	bad\passive
urban	حضرى	civil
boring	ممل	dull
factual	حقيقى	real
sustainable	مستديم	continuous
fresh	طازج	good
extraordinary	غير عادى	amazing
cheap	رخيص	inexpensive
variety	تنوع	diversity
variety	نوع	sort
sustain	يصون	maintain
summary	تلخيص	outline
run	يدير	operate \manage
productive	خصب	rich\fertile
original	أصلى	native
keep	يربى	raise
involve	يشتمل على	include
innovative	مبتكر	original

Antonyms

sustainable	مستدام	unsustainable	غير مستدام
productive	منتج	unproductive	غير مجدى
include	يتضمن	exclude	يستبعد
keep	يحافظ	lose	يفقد
original	أصلى	fake	مزيف
negative	سلبى	positive	ايجابى
boring	ممل	interesting	شيق
fresh	طازج	stale	مصوف
expensive	غالى	cheap	رخيص

Derivatives

Produce

produce	ينتج	produce	انتاج زراعى
productive	كثير الانتاج	production	انتاج
producer	منتج	products	منتجات

Sustain

sustain	يتحمل	sustainable	مستدام
unsustainable	غير مستدام	sustainability	الاستدامه

Vary

vary	يتحمل	variety	تنوع
various	غير مستدام	variable	متغير

Agriculture

agriculture	علم الزراعة	agriculture	النشاط الزراعى
agricultural	زراعى	agriculturalist	خير زراعى

Innovate

innovate	يبتكر	innovation	ابتكار
innovative	مبتكر-جديد	innovatory	مبتكر-خلاق

Don't get confused

farming الزراعة\الاهتمام بالحيوانات والارض	agriculture النشاط الزراعى الاهتمام بالارض فقط
agriculture علم الزراعة	agricultural زراعى
hydroponics علم الزراعة بدون تربة	agriculturalist خبير فى الزراعة
climate مناخ "فترة طويلة"	weather طقش فترة زمنية قصيرة أو مكان محدد
encourage+ inf يشجع	discourage from+ v_ing يحبط

1-The……suddenly changed and we arrived home cold and wet.
a-climatic **b-weather** **c-climate**
2-Most scientists accept that ……..change is linked to carbon emissions.
a-climatic **b-weather** **c-whether**
3-We must …….students to study more.
a-encourage **b-discourage** **c-courage**
4-He has discouraged me………completing my study.
a-of **b-from** **c-by**
5-……………is the practice or business of growing crops or keeping animals on a farm.
a-Hydroponics **b-agriculture** **c-farming**
6-………..is a way of growing plants usually crops without soil.
a-Hydroponics **b-Agriculture** **c-Farming**

Language Notes

instead - instead of

instead بدلا من ذلك وتأتى فى بداية أو نهاية جملة رقم 2
Instead of+ v_ing بدلا من

- -(Instead – **instead of**) Mona, he chose Noha in the team.
- -He didn't go to school (**instead**-instead of) he stayed at home.
- -He didn't go to school .He stayed at home (**instead**-instead of).

Hundred, thousands, million, billion

هذه الكلمات اذا جاء قبلها عدد محدد تكون مفرد اما اذا لم يسبقها عدد محدد وتشير الي كميات كبيره تكون جمعا

- -I need five (thousands- **thousand**) pounds to start project.
- -(Million – **Millions**) of pounds spent on destructive weapons.

اعرف ان المبالغ الماليه المحدده تعامل المفرد

- -Three million pounds (**is** – are) not enough for this project.

North - northern

the north of	northern	شمالي
the south of	southern	جنوب
the east of	eastern	شرق
the west of	western	غرب

1-He lives in………….. Europe.
a-The southern b-south c-**southern**
2-the city is located in………………Canada.
a-The north b-**the north of** c- the northern

include - contain

- -**include** يتضمن .يحتوي ع (يأتي بعدها جزء من كل)
- -**contain** = involve يحتوي علي (يأتي بعدها كل الشئ)
- -**consist of** يتكون لا بد من وجود حرف الجر ويأتي بعدها المكونات الاساسيه
- **enclose** = **attach** يحيط **enclose** يرفق
- Including متضمنا \ من بينهم inclusion تضمن

- -there were 13 injured people in the accident (**including** – containing) 2 children.
- -the bottle (includes- **contains**) 3 letters of water.
- -The flat (contains- **consists**) of 3 rooms.
- -I have (contained – **enclosed**) the photo with the e-mail.

Floor \ ground \ soil \ land

Soil تربه "خاصه بالزراعه ، تربه معنويه"
Floor ارضيه "بلاط شقه ، حجره"
Ground ارضيه ملعب او شارع
Land ارض يابس وليس ماء \ منطقه يملكها شخص ما)
earth - تربة زراعية-كوكب الارض -

- -Have you swept the (ground – **floor**)
- -Home are the (floor- **soil**) of reform or corruption.
- -the (ground – **earth**) goes round the sun.
- -the player fell on (**the ground**- the earth)

•

Because - because of

Because - as - since + جمله كامله لان
Because of - due to - owing to + v-ing بسبب

-He didn't come (because- **because of**) his illness.
-He didn't come (**because**- because of) he was ill.

Expressions

make money	يكون ثروه	**keep** livestook	يربي حيوانات مزارع
earn money	يكسب مال	**introduce** a problem	يعرض مشكله
offer a solution	يقدم حل	**take** ages	يأخذ وقتا طويلا
invest money	يستثمر مال	**write** a summary	يكتب تلخيص
tell the difference	يخبر الفرق	**start** fires	يشعل نيران
damage health	يدمر الصحه	**grow** crops	يزرع محاصيل
damage the environment	يدمر البيئه	**get** worse	يزداد سوءا

Don't get confused

purpose	غرض	proposal	عرض
seize the chance	ينتهز الفرصه	miss the chance	يفوت الفرصه
follow	يتبع	flow	انسياب
grow up	يكبر للاشخاص	grow to	يزاداد الي
production	انتاج صناعي \ زراعي	produce	انتاج زراعي
staff	هيئه عاملين	stuff	يحشو
earth	الارض	soil	ارض زراعيه
heal	يلتئم	heal up	يلتئم

The future of farming

According to the United Nations, there **will be** almost 10 **billion** people in the world by 2050. As a result, we **will have** to increase our **food production** by about 70 **percent**. However, farmers do not have **space** to keep more **livestock** and grow more crops. **Instead**, they'll need to **look for** more **sustainable solutions** and this will **involve producing** a wider **variety of** food. How would you **feel about** eating a **burger** that was grown in a **laboratory**? Scientists think that it could be more **sustainable** than keeping livestock. Some of the people who have eaten those **burgers** say that they can't tell the **difference** between the new **burgers** and real meat.

Restaurants from the United Nations have found that some kinds of **agriculture** are **seriously** damaging the land. This is not sustainable. If forming continues **to cause** so much damage, there won't be enough **land left** for food production. In Europe, most of the damage is due to **farmers using** too many **chemicals**, so they will need to find new ways **to help** their crops grow. In southern Africa, the problem is that there is too much rain in the summer. In the future, we can

expect that farmers in southern Africa **will be using innovations** in technology to remove water from the land and use it **elsewhere**.

Is algae the future of food?

We will need to find **sustainable sources** of food in the future because there **will be more** people to feed and many places will be too hot and dry for agriculture. So, why don't we think about farms in the sea? Algae are plants that grow very quickly in water and **wet places**. They are eaten by everything from the smallest fish to giant whales. Some kinds of Algae are called **seaweed**, and this is a very popular food in China and Japan. Algae is very **healthy** and some scientists believe that a lot more people **will be eating** it in the future. They hope that farmers **won't need** to damage the environment, because they **will be growing** our food in the ocean. In fact, scientists think that growing algae **will help** to clean the sea and **improve** the air that we **breathe**. But will you want to eat it? Well, you might not even **notice**. Scientists are already using seaweed to **replace salt** in **bread** and more other foods to make it much **healthier**.

==

This essay will **focus on** the future of **agriculture**. First, I will explain the **reason why** agriculture needs to change. After that we will **look at** several ways that agriculture could **change**. Finally, I will give my opinion on what **farmers** should do to **prepare for** the future.

The Earth's surface is **heating up** and soon there will be **less land** that farmers **can use**.

In the case of Africa, the **continent** could **lose up** to 18 **percent** of its **farm land** in the next fifty years. As a result, **farmers will** need to farm their **land** even more efficiently.

Due to the fact that there will be less land **available** for **agriculture** in the future, farmers will need to **grow** a **greater variety of crops**. **Evidence suggests** that keeping **livestock** will not be **sustainable** and we may start the production of new sources of food, like **algae**, **instead**.

In my view, farmers should see this is as a **chance** to **try** new things and to **start** using new technology, such as **robots**, on their farms, they should **start doing** this **immediately** so they're **prepared for** the future.

To conclude, agriculture is clearly going to change a lot over the next few decades.

The future of forests

The world has been **losing** millions of trees from the **rainforests** every year **for** a long time. Many trees **get cut down** so that we have wood to **make** furniture, and many more get cut down because people need the land to **grow food**. However, there may be hope for the future because countries around the world are changing the way we think about these important areas. Changes **started** a **long time** ago in Costa Rica. Around 60% of the rainforest in this small **central American country** was lost in the 1980s.

but in the **1990s**; the government started working with local farmers and **persuaded** them **t**o **look** after the rainforest **instead of cutting** down more trees. This **encouraged** tourists **to visit** the country, and soon the local people started to make more money from tourism than from cutting down trees.
It was **a great success**, but things **got worse** in **other parts** of the world, such as the Amazon rainforest, until 2004. Then many people and governments around the world started to change how they thought about rainforests, and the number of trees **cut down** there **has** been getting smaller every year. Many parts of the Amazon rainforest are now protected and, like Costa Rica, it **is hoped** that more people will be **visiting** and **enjoying** this **extraordinary** place in the future. Finally, we can all hope that our children **will be learning** about the rainforests for many years **to come**.

Hydroponics

With the population of the world predicted to grow to around 10 billion by 2050, **one** problem we will have **is finding** enough land for food production. A possible solution to this problem is **using** something **called hydroponics**. Hydroponics is a **way** to **grow** plants in **special water** which contains all the food that plants need to grow. This is a big help for farmers living in areas with **poor soil**. Hydroponics uses a lots less space than traditional farming and, **surprisingly**, it also uses less water because any water that the plants do not use is reused, there are also fewer problems with insects. Almost any plant can grow using **hydroponics** and many plants produce more fruit and leaves this way. Some people argue that **hydroponics** is not very **good for** large farms because they need **expensive computers** to **control** the **flow** of water, light, etc. to the plants, but others **argue that** it could **offer** the best solution to future problems. Many scientists think that in the future, we **will be using** hydroponics to grow food even in places where nothing grows now, such as **desert**, **Antarctica** or even space.

==

This essay will **focus on** something my uncle is planning to do to help food **production**: something called **urban farming**.
My uncle lives in London and first, I will explain what **urban farming** is and why he wants to do it with a group of his friends.
Urban farming is **growing** food in **our cities**. Of course, cities are not usually **good for farming** due to the fact that there is so little **green space**, but he says they will be using **flat roofs**, gardens and **open spaces** to grow what they can.
In the case of London, people **already grow** a lot of **flowers** in their **gardens**, but next year, the **group** of **friends will be planting** more fruit and vegetables in any open spaces they can use. At the end of the year, they will be **eating fresh** fruit and **vegetables** from **these spaces**.
In my view, **urban farming** is a great idea. It will help my uncle and his friends to **save money** in the shops, and it might also help them to **earn money**. They hope they will be selling some of the **produce** to local **restaurants** and markets.

To conclude, urban farming is an interesting idea. All the evidence suggests that it could help us grow our own food in the future, even in cities without much outdoor space.

Listening

The population problem in Egypt

The population of Egypt is growing by nearly two percent a year. That means that there are one million more people living in its cities every six months. This a problem in a country where 95 percent of its population live on about four percent of its land. It is thought that the population of Egypt will be around 128 million by 2030. So what are the solutions to these problems? One plan is to invest billions of pounds in a new capital city outside Cairo. This is one of the big projects that will help the 700,000 young people who start looking for work each year.

Interviewer: Hello everyone. In today's show I'll be talking to my guest, Dr Sarita Parker, who's an expert on the rainforests in Borneo. Welcome to the show, Dr Parker.
Dr Parker: It's great to be with you, John.
Interviewer: Now, we all think that we know what a rainforest is, but how would you describe it?
Dr Parker: A rainforest has a lot of trees and many different types of animals and plants live in it. And it's a place that's usually very hot and it rains a lot, too.
Interviewer: And what can you tell us about the rainforests in Borneo?
Dr Parker: Well, Borneo is a large island in South-East Asia, and it has one of the oldest rainforests in the world. However, recently the island has become hotter and there has been less rain than usual. And scientists think that there will be even less rainfall on the island in the next few years.
Interviewer: Why is that?
Dr Parker: unfortunately, some farmers are cutting down trees and starting fires so they can grow crops and keep livestock there. Now the rainforest is about thirty percent smaller today than it was forty years ago. And if there's less rainforest, there's less rain and the island will get even hotter, you see. So, we're very worried that farmers are going to continue to damage the rainforest over the next few decades. That would be terrible for the animals and plant life in the rainforest, and Borneo would heat up even more.
Interviewer: Do you think those farmers will keep cutting down so many trees in the future, or will they use more sustainable ways to grow crops and keep livestock?
Dr Parker: Well, it won't be easy. Of course, many farmers are just trying to feed their families, however, we hope that in a few years' time, more farmers will be using sustainable farming techniques and things will improve. They need more information about how they can plant new trees and move crops around from one field to another each year. But farmers won't change and they understand why they need to change and they have everything they need to do that. Many organizations will be running an education programme next month to help them.

Interviewer: **Thank** you very much **for** your time, Dr Parker.

==

Amir: Is that your **homework**, Hany?
Hany: Yes, What's wrong with it? It **took** me **ages**.
Amir: I can see that. It's very long.
Hany: So what?
Amir: Well, we were **asked** to write a **summary**, and yours **looks longer** than the text we're summarizing! You know it should be shorter, right?
Hany: Yes, I know that. But I **didn't want** to miss anything important.
Amir: So, what was the text about?
Hany: I can't remember, but it's all in my summary.
Amir: My friend, you need to think more and write less. Start **by reading** the whole **text** and try to understand as much as you can. Ask yourself: What's the main idea? How would I **explain** it to a friend **quickly**? Don't start writing anything until you've **done** that.
Hany: But you know me. I always **forget** something **important**.
Amir: Then you **should read** the text again. But the **second** time, underline the most **important words** or phrases in it.
These are usually **nouns** for the things or people that the text is about, verbs for important actions, or phrases for times and places.
Hany: Okay.
Amir: After that, try to only **look at** the important words that you underlined when you're writing your summary. And just write complete sentences that fill in the gaps between those words.
Hany: I see.
Amir: It's also helpful to use words or phrases that show the order in which things happen. Phrases like "first", "after that" or "finally".
Hany: And then?
Amir: When you've finished writing your summary, read it again , check that it is clear , and then look back at thre original text to see if you have included all the important information know where they got that information.

Exercises On Vocabulary

1. The closure of the factory will cause great……..to the local economy.
a-help b-profit c-damage d-interests
2. Some greedy farmers use special…………to make the crops grow faster.
a-chemicals b-paints c-ingredients d-components
3. The water of the factory is heated using…..from the sun.
a-atom b-reactor c-energy d-wind
4. the government should make a new policy to protect the ……………
a-environment b-employment c-treatment d-payment
5. A\An….is a person who studies something carefully and tries to discover new facts about it.

a-graduate **b-explore** **c-researcher** **d-conductor**

6. We should do more and more efforts to ……money for our new project.

a-spend **b-attribute** **c-save** **d-waste**

7. Cooperation and teamwork are two necessary qualities for the ……and progress of any society.

a-succeed **b-success** **c-successful** **d-successfully**

8. As my cousin is colour blind, he can't………the difference between some colours.

a-report **b-invent** **c-tell** **d-accept**

9. I decided to try tennis instead ……..volleyball in the sports club.

a-in **b-at** **c-of** **d-for**

10. The word "ignore" can be the opposite to the word…………

a-apply **b-neglect** **c-mention** **d-invent**

11. ----------------------- is the science of growing plants and keeping animals.

a)Industry **b) Agriculture** **c) Tourism** **d) Welding**

12. The government should put a clear ----------------- policy to help improve agriculture .

a) cultural **b) intellectual** **c) agricultural** **d) cultivate**

13. Farmers should give due care to their ---------------- such as cows , sheep and birds.

a) cutlery **b) kettle** **c) cattle** **d) livestock**

14. Lack of water has affectied badly on rice --------------------- in Egypt .

a) production **b) introduction** **c) producer** **d) productive**

15. We aspire to have ------------------------- development in our country .

a) sustain **b) sustainable** **c) unsustainable** **d) comfortable**

16. There is a wide ------------------- of crops to grow in our land .

a) vary **b) various** **c) variety** **d) variable**

17. Tourism and the suez canal are the most important---------------- of our national income.

a) sources **b) sorts** **c) original** **d) sauce**

18. Poor families spend about 80 to 90 ----------------- of their income on food

a)per **b) hundred** **c) cent** **d) per cent**

19. The antonym of the word tiny is (small – hug – huge – minute)

20. The increase in -------------------- hinders our progress and our development.

a) agriculture **b) population** **c) industry** **d) innovation**

21. It is easy for the wise leader to find immediate ------------------ to his people's problems.

a) solutions **b) solve** **c) salutation** **d) sanitation**

22. Can you tell me about a project in which I can ---------------- my money?

a) waste **b) lose** **c) invest** **d) investment**

23. The expansion of building on the agricultural land will push us to depend on---------

a) statistics **b) economics** **c) hydroponics** **d) hibernation**

24. The weather is ………..today . I will take my umbrella .

a-wet **b- dry** **c- drought** **d- dryness**

25. To save petrol , most of the world countries have begun to use --------------- vehicles.

a) electricity **b) electric** **c) electrical** **d) electronic**

26. The salary will be fixed according ………. qualifications and experience.

a- in **b- of** **c- to** **d- too**

27. We wanted to buy a big villa but it was a case of cutting our coat ------------- to our cloth

a) according **b) recording** **c) cord** **d) recorder**

28. I can solve this problem in --------------------- of a couple of hours .

a) timing **b) space** **c) only** **d) about**

29. His failure is a direct -------------------- his carelessness

a) result **b) result from** **c) result in** **d) result of**

30. the Uniited --------------- organisation has an office in most countries of the world.

a) Countries **b) States** **c) Nations** **d) National**

31. Your low income is due ....your laziness .

a- to **b-of** **c-from** **d-on**

32. the earthquake has ------------------ a lot of damage to the houses in the area

a) done **b) made** **c) given** **d) brought**

33. Any investment -------------------- an element of risk-

a) revolves **b) involves** **c) solves** **d) resolves**

34. This liquid can ---------------- any spot of oil from your clothes .It is effective in washing.

a) pollute **b) stain** **c) remove** **d) move**

35. Do you think -------------------- change has affected our yields of agriculture ?

a) climate **b) weather** **c) air** **d) soil**

36. How far is Mount Everest above sea ....?

a- standard **b-devil** **c- level** **d- lava**

37. i want to know the real reason .... your negligence .اهمال

a) of **b) for** **c) about** **d) with**

38. Cutting down ------------------- has affected our climate negatively .

a) grass **b) plants** **c) rainforests** **d) weeds**

39. Enironmentalists want the governments to punish those who --------------- rainforests.

a) protect **b) conserve** **c) reserve** **d) destroy**

40. What are the causes .... the fires occurring in the rainforests?

A) of **b) for** **c)with** **d)at**

41. People believe that we will depend on ---------- as a new source of food from the sea .

a) rice **b) wheat** **c) algae** **d) meat**

42. My father lives in his fourth ....He is still young.

a)century **b) decade** **c) millennium** **d) year**

43. The teacher has focused .... some important points in his explanation.

A) in **b) at** **c) on** **d) of**

44. I have wriiten a long .... about pollution for homework.

a- essay **b- story** **c-book** **d- brochure**

45. Do you think learning online can ---------------- learning in schools?

a) place **b) displace** **c) replace** **d) replacement.**

46. Asia is the biggest .... in the world .

a- country **b- state** **c- nation** **d- continent**

47. The police are looking for any --------------- to solve the mystery of the crime.

a) evidence **b) evident** **c) victim** **c) innocent**

48. Some people cut .... forests to use its wood to make furniture.

a- of b- up c- down d- off

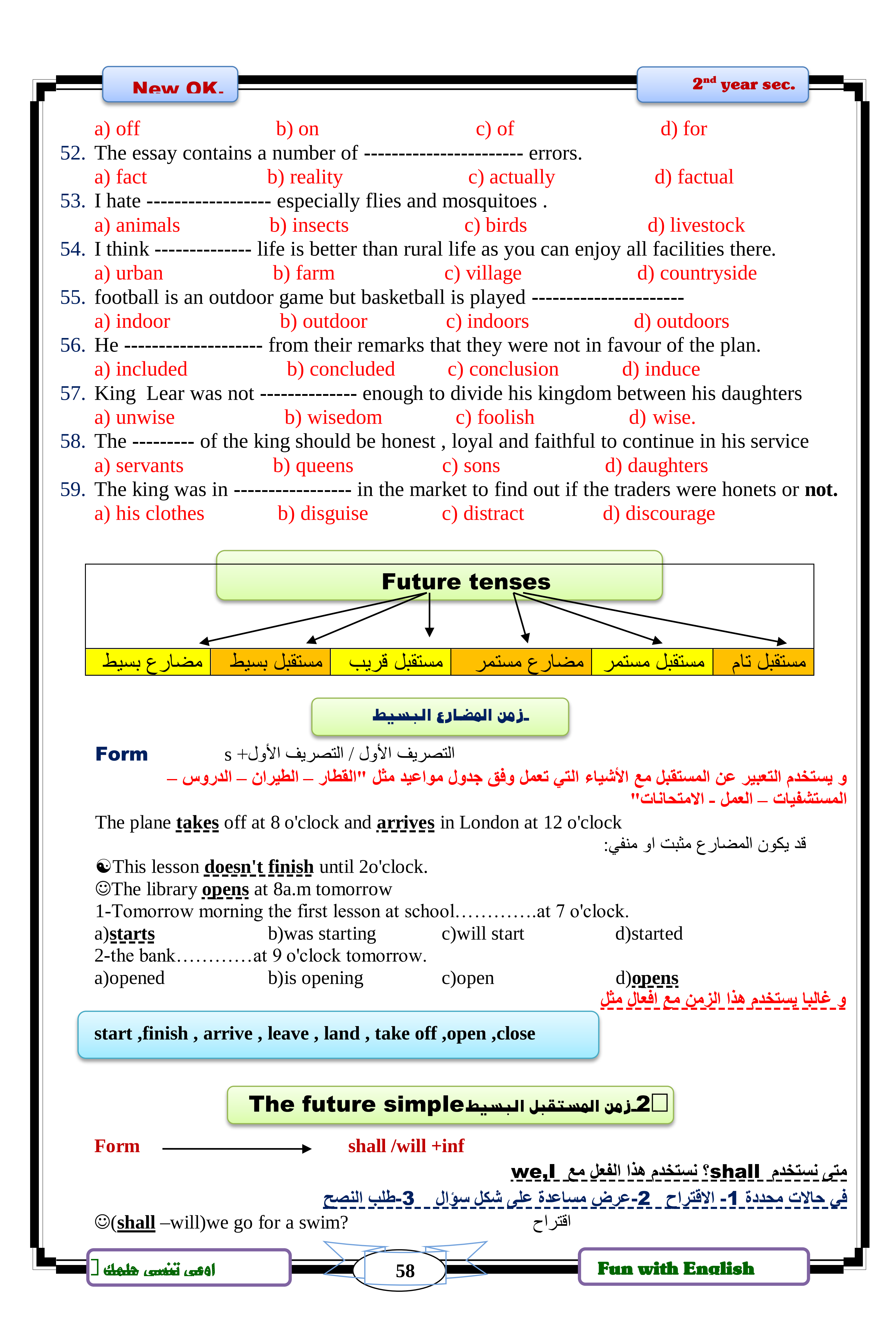
49. Before building the High Dam our .... was fertile .

(a-earth b- ground c- soil d- floor

50. Because of lack of silt , our soil needs a contionous supply of -------------- fertilizers.

a) chemical b) chemistry c) chemicals d) chemist

51. Can we depend on hydroponics instead -------------- the traditional way of farming.



a) off b) on c) of d) for

52. The essay contains a number of ---------------------- errors.
a) fact b) reality c) actually d) factual
53. I hate ----------------- especially flies and mosquitoes .
a) animals b) insects c) birds d) livestock
54. I think -------------- life is better than rural life as you can enjoy all facilities there.
a) urban b) farm c) village d) countryside
55. football is an outdoor game but basketball is played ---------------------
a) indoor b) outdoor c) indoors d) outdoors
56. He ------------------- from their remarks that they were not in favour of the plan.
a) included b) concluded c) conclusion d) induce
57. King Lear was not -------------- enough to divide his kingdom between his daughters
a) unwise b) wisedom c) foolish d) wise.
58. The --------- of the king should be honest , loyal and faithful to continue in his service
a) servants b) queens c) sons d) daughters
59. The king was in ---------------- in the market to find out if the traders were honets or **not.**
a) his clothes b) disguise c) distract d) discourage

Future tenses

مضارع بسيط	مستقبل بسيط	مستقبل قريب	مضارع مستمر	مستقبل مستمر	مستقبل تام

ـزمن المضارع البسيط

Form التصريف الأول / التصريف الأول+ s

و يستخدم التعبير عن المستقبل مع الأشياء التي تعمل وفق جدول مواعيد مثل "القطار – الطيران – الدروس – المستشفيات – العمل - الامتحانات"

The plane **takes** off at 8 o'clock and **arrives** in London at 12 o'clock

قد يكون المضارع مثبت او منفي:

☯This lesson **doesn't finish** until 2o'clock.
☺The library **opens** at 8a.m tomorrow
1-Tomorrow morning the first lesson at school…………at 7 o'clock.
a)**starts** b)was starting c)will start d)started
2-the bank…………at 9 o'clock tomorrow.
a)opened b)is opening c)open d)**opens**

و غالبا يستخدم هذا الزمن مع افعال مثل

start ,finish , arrive , leave , land , take off ,open ,close

The future simple 2ـزمن المستقبل البسيط

Form ⟶ **shall /will +inf**

متى نستخدم shall؟ نستخدم هذا الفعل مع we,I

في حالات محددة 1- الاقتراح 2-عرض مساعدة على شكل سؤال 3-طلب النصح

☺(**shall** –will)we go for a swim? اقتراح

☯(**shall**-will) I open the door for you ? عرض مساعدة
My computer has stopped , what(will-**shall**) I do ? طلب النصح

متي نستخدم will

1-prediction التنبؤ	I think Ali (**will**-is going -is) pass the test tomorrow
كيف اعرف انه تنبؤ من بعض الافعال و الاحوال مثل : expect –think – sure – perhaps –possible –probably –believe –suppose –hope –certainly	
2-future facts حقائق مستقبلية	❁Marwa (**will** –is going to –is)be 16 on Monday.
3- Promise وعد	❁If you succeed I (**will** –am going to)buy you a present.
4-threat تهديد	❁I (**will** –am going to) fire you if you don't concentrate on your work.
5-offer عرض بجملة خبرية	❁I (shall-**will**-am going) lend you some money if you want
6-quick decisions قرار سريع	❁That's the phone ,I (**will**-am going to –shall)answer it. اي اننا نستخدم هذا الزمن مع **Has just decided – decided just now – his quick decision is that**
7-warning التحذير	❁Study hard or you (**will**-are going to)fail.
9-Hopes الامال	❁I hope our team (**will**-is going to)win.
10-fixed connectors روابط ثابتة After , as soon as , when ⟶ مضارع بسيط /تام.........⟶ .will+inf ❁After we finish , we(**will**-shall-are going to) have rest	

3_المستقبل القريب

Form ⟶ **am, is are going to +inf**

و هو يدل-حدث على وشك الحدوث و له دليل في الحاضر

💣The sky is cloudy , it (will-**is going to**)rain

ملحوظة اذا وجد دليل مع الفعل think فهذا ايضا حدث على وشك الحدوث و ليس تنبؤ

💣The sky is cloudy , I think it (will-**is going to**) rain

💣Look out ! you (will-**are going to**)fall قد يكون الدليل عبارة عن تحذير

و لكن لاحظ اذا تبع التحذير بـ or صاحبو will

💣Look out or you (**will**-are going to)fall

💣This is a clever boy , I think he (**will**-is going to)be a doctor

الصفات الثابتة لا يفضل استخدامها كدليل

☛He is a carless driver , I think he (**will** – is going to)have an accident

☛He drives carelessly , I think he (will – **is going to**)have an accident

☛Liverpool's players are known to be skilled. They …………… the match easily.

are winning b. are going to win c. win d. **will win**

فى الجملة السابقة يجوز معاملة killed على انها صفة ثابتة او متغيرة لذا will or are going to والافضل will

2-يدل على حدث له خطة /نية / تم التقرير له ____**Planned-intended-decided**

💣Sarah and Mohammed have made plans that they…………tomorrow.

d)shall skate c)skate b)will skate a)**are going to skate**

💣I have decided that I……………English this afternoon.

d)am studying **c)am going to study** b)will study a)study

4زمن المضارع المستمر

Form……. ⟶ **am ,is ,are +v"ing"**

و يدل على حدث مرتب او معد او مجهز له من قبل

arranged , prepared, organized

☯He is(**killing** –going to kill) his wife tomorrow , he has arranged everything

لاحظ الملاحظات الاتية جيدا:

تحديد الموعد +مضارع مستمر/مضارع تام .... ⟶ am ,is ,are +v"ing"
لم يتم تحديد الموعد+ مضارع مستمر/ .... ⟶ am ,is are going to +inf

☒He has saved money as he is(**buying**-going to buy) a car next month
☯He is saving money as he is (buying-**going to buy**)a car

تمشى حسب الكلمة الدالة ⟶ كلمة تدل على زمن معين+تحديد الموعد.......
am, is , are +v"ing" ⟶ لا يوجد كلمة تدل على زمن+تحديد الموعد............

☒He (**is meeting** –is going to meet)Ali at 7p.m
☯He is (meeting-**going to meet**)Ali at 7p.m , he has planned that

اذا كان التحديد للموعد جملة خبرية فالاختيار الصحيح مضارع مستمر
اذا كان التحديد للموعد في جملة استفهامية فالاثنين صح و لكن الافضل مستقبل قريب عن المضارع المستمر

☒We are(**playing**-going to play)this afternoon
☯Are we(playing-**going to play**)this afternoon?

5.المستقبل المستمر Will be + v"ing

يعبر عن حدث سوف يكون مستمر في وقت محدد في المستقبل

between.........and...............		**from.........to................**
at 7 o'clock tomorrow	**this time tomorrow/...............**	**then**

Don't phone me at 7 p.m tomorrow as I will (sleep-**be sleeping**)then
Between 8and 10 tomorrow I will(take-**be taking**)my exam

2- كما يستخدم المستقبل المستمر للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون مستمرا عندما يقطعه حدث آخر أو عندما يتم حدث آخر في المستقبل. (تقاطع)

- I **will be waiting** for you when your bus arrives.
- I'll **be staying** at Madison Hotel, if anything *happens* and **you** *need* to contact me.
- He **will be studying** at the library tonight, so he will not see Jennifer when she *arrives*.

3- كما يستخدم المستقبل المستمر للتعبير عن حدثين سوف يكونان مستمران معا فى نفس الوقت فى المستقبل. (توازى) و هنا يفضل وضع الزمن الذى بعد الرابط مضارع بسيط او مستمر

- At the party tomorrow, Ahmed **will be singing** while Sarah **is dancing**.
I **will be working** hard next week **while** you **are relaxing** on the beach.

4- يستخدم المستقبل المستمر أيضا عندما نخمن ما يفعله شخص الآن

- Don't call him now, he'**ll be doing** his homework.
- I don't want to disturb them. I'm sure they'**ll be cleaning** their house at the moment.

5- لا يستخدم المستقبل المستمر مع الأفعال التى تعبر عن حالـــــة(افعال الشعور – الامتلاك – الكينونة – قصيرة المدى .

Be – have يملك own – possess- want – join – know – seem – love – like – admire – prefer -
- Maher **will be** at my house when you arrive. (Not: ~~will be being~~)
- After I study, I **will know** all the answers for the test. (Not: ~~will be knowing~~)

may be + V.ing

- يستخدم (may be v.ing) للتعبير عن أحداث محتملـــة الحدوث (أحداث غير مؤكدة) ستكون مستمرة فى المستقبـــل

- I can't visit you because I will / may be doing my homework this evening.
- In 100 years, people **may be living** in space.
- When she's 21, she **may be working** in London.

Will have +p.p — 6) زمن المستقبل التام

يدل على اتمام حدث في وقت معين في المستقبل

By +زمن في المستقبل	In two years' time
Before/By the time مضارع بسيط+ مستقبل بسيط او تام و الافضل تام	

By 2050 , we will(build-**have built**)the bridge

قد يكون الفعل في المبني للمجهول

☺In three years' time ,the road will…………

a)**have been paved** c)have paved b)pave a)be paved

Before Ali comes , we will (do-**have done**)the homework

المعنى هو الاساس فى ازمنة المستقبل ركز مع الامثلة

- By 2030 we will(build – **have built**) 20 schools
- By 2030 , most of the people all over the world will (**speak** – have spoken) English
- By 7 o'clock tonight I will (**be doing** – have done)the homework so I can't come with you
- By 7 o'clock tonight , I will (be doing – **have done**) the homework so we can go out

-Choose the correct answer : practice

1- Tomorrow , I………..to a secret location . I have arranged for that
a)am travelling b)will travel c)am going travel d)travel

2- they………..probably be in space for about five or six days
a)should b)can c)shall d)will

3- I'm sure tomorrow's match……….really exciting
a)is being b)will be c)is going to be d)might be

4- My train……….at 7.15 this evening
a)is going to leave b)leaves c)will leave d)is leaving

5- -I think my brother………..a doctor, he is clever .
a)is going to be b)will be c)would be d)is

6- My plans for tomorrow morning is that I……….prof Afifi
a)am going to meet b)meet c)will meet d)will be meeting

7- -A:this year , I'm going on holiday to Alex . B: I'm sure you……..it
a)will enjoy b)are enjoying c)enjoy d)are going to enjoy

8- I think my brother .... a doctor , he's very clever
a)is b)will be c)is being d)is going to be

9- Are you ...... tennis after school today ?
a)play b)going to play c)will play d)playing

10- I expect he .... the exam
a)pass b)passes c)is passing d)will pass

11- Between 7 and 9 I ...... sleeping
a)am b)will be c)am being d)will have

12- Haneen ..... 16 on Monday
a)will be b)is c)is going to d)is being

13- He .... a plan for his study , he has intended to do that
a)is making b)will make c)will be making d)is going to make

14- I think the weather in England ………… cold and rainy .
a) will be b) is going to be c) is being d) shall be

15- There's not a cloud in the sky – it ………… another very sunny day .
a) will be b) is going to be c) is being d) will

16- They ……… lots of sports here soon, they've prepared for this .
a) are going to start b) will start c) are starting d) start

17- I think you ……… very good at squash .
a) is going to be b) are being c) are going to d) will be

18- I've planned. I ………… try hockey .
a) will b) am going to c) am doing to d) won't

19- I've decided what to do at the weekend. I ………… my uncle .
a) am going visit b) will visit c) am going to visit d) is visiting

20-I…………the summer holiday in Marsa Matrouh as planned.
a-am going to spend b-will spend c-am spending d-would spend

Exercises on Grammar

Choose the correct answer:

1. Don't be late. The bus .... at exactly ten o'clock!
a) leaves b) going to leave c) has left d) left
2. A lot of people are waiting for the museum to open. It................... busy there today!
a) is being b) was c) is going to be d) has been
3. It is very hot in the house. I .... on the air conditioner.
a) am turning b) turn c) will turn d) am going to turn
4. We can't use classroom five tomorrow because they.................... the walls.
a) paint b) will have painted c) are painting d) will paint
5. Your bags look heavy. I .... you to carry them.
a) will be helped b) am helping c) help d) will help
6. The teacher says that we .... relative clauses next week.
a) going to study b) study c) are studying d) studying
7. My grandfather.................. 70 on his next birthday!
a) is being b) will be c) is going to be d) will have been
8. At ten o'clock tomorrow, I .... on a train to Aswan.
a) travel b) will have travelled c) going to travel d) will be travelling
9. We .... studying this book by the end of this year.
a) finish b) will be finishing c) will have finished d) are finishing
10. Tomorrow we're playing tennis from 3 o'clock until 4.30. So at 4 o'clock, we......... tennis.
a) are playing b) will be playing c) will have played d) played
11. Tomorrow we're playing tennis from 3 o'clock until 4.30. So at 5 o'clock, we.......... tennis.
a) are playing b) will be playing c) will have played d) played
12. There are no clouds in the sky today. I think that it..................... very hot.
a) 's going to be b) will be c) has been d) was
13. I predict that in the future mobile phones.................... much smaller.
a) were b) are going to be c) are d) will be
14. There's a book club meeting after school at 2 p.m. and everyone................. there.
a) will go b) are going c) is going d) go
15. I'll call you when I .... at my hotel.
a) arrives b) will arrive c) arrive d) am arriving
16. The train to Cairo is on platform four and it.................... in thirty minutes.
a) left b) leaves c) has left d) will leave
17. Those bags look heavy, so I...................... them for you.
a) carries b) am carrying c) will carry d) carried
18. Don't phone her now. She.....................dinner.
a) will have b) may be having c) will have had d) are having
19. At one o'clock tomorrow, I.................... lunch with my friends.
a) was eating b) eating c) will be eating d) ate
20. By ten o'clock tonight, I..................... all my homework.

a) will finish b) will have finished c) finish d) will be finishing

21. Let's eat dinner when John................. here.
a) gets b) will get c) will have get d) get

22. Experts think that Cairo .... by more than half a million people next year.
a) will grow b) will have grown c) will be growing d) grows

23. We ....a family party on Saturday. Would you like to come?
a) are having b) will have c) have d) is going to have

24. Our last lesson .... at two o'clock this afternoon.
a) will finish b) are going to finish c) finishes d) are finishing

25. Look, there's a sandstorm. I ....the windows.
a) closed b) close c) will have closed d) will close

26. I can’t see you later this evening. I................ my homework.
a) did b) will do c) ’m doing d) was doing

27. There’s a good film on TV tonight. It................... at ten o’clock.
a) will finish b) finishes c) has finished d) is finishing

28. Please wait here until the nurse .... you.
a) call b) calls c) is calling d) will call

29. I’m going to the airport in a minute. My plane .... at ten o’clock.
a) leave b) is leaving c) leaves d) will leave

30. Look, I can give you a lift to the station because I..................that way anyway.
a) won't drive b) will have driven c) drives d) will be driving

31. I’m sure that you …………your time with us in Cairo.
a) enjoys b) will enjoy c) will have enjoyed d) are enjoying

32. In the future, computers…...........….. traditional books.
a) will replace b) will been replaced c) will be replacing d) will be replaced

33. In the future most of our work ………. by machines.
a) will be doing b) has been done c) will be d) will be done

34. By the time we get to the stadium. The match…….........…
a) will have started b) was starting c) is starting d) had started

35. In the future, every new book will probably be…….…..... as an e-book.
a) publish b) publishing c) published d) publishes

36. We hope that the road…...............… early morning traffic.
a) is reducing b) will have been reduced c) will be reduced d) will reduce

37. She's going to look for a job as soon as she .... in London.
a) arrive b) have arrived c) will arrive d) arrives

38. There won't be anyone in the office. Everyone...................... home.
a) will be going b) will have gone c) go d) have gone

39. Don't phone me before 8 o'clock, we.................... dinner.
a) will have b) will be having c) will have had d) are having

40. This time tomorrow, we'll be celebrating because we .... our exams.
a) will finish b) will have finished c) will be finishing d) are finishing

41. By the time you get home, I....................the house from top to bottom.
a) will clean b) will be cleaning c) will have cleaned d) am cleaning

42. I…………to the Book Fair to buy the books I need. This is my attention.
a-will have gone b-am going to go c-am going d-will go

43. I don’t think the exam……………difficult.
a-will be b-is going to c-will have been d-is being

44. My brother has decided to immigrate. He ………next month.
a-will travel b-travels c-is going to travel d-is travelling

45. Next year, my grandfather……….75 years old.
a-will be b-is c-will have been d-is being

Unit 4 Changing English

abbreviation	اختصار	suitable	مناسب	name	اذكر اسم
later	فيما بعد	no longer	لم يعد	side	جانب
latter	الآخر - الثاني	formal	رسمي	in response	ردا علي
laugh	يضحك - ضحكة	linguist	اللغوي	upset	منزعج - متضايق
laughter	الضحك	innovator	مجدد	worried	قلق
a gap	فجوة	actually	في الواقع	receive	يستقبل
argue	يجادل	introduce	يدخل	selfie	سيلفي
argument	جدال	basic	أساسي	phrases	عبارات
hope	أمل - يأمل	function	وظيفة	words	كلمات
maths	رياضيات	positive	ايجابي	prefix	بادئة
a title	لقب - عنوان	negative	سلبي	suffix	لاحقة
adults	الكبار	order	أمر - يأمر	statement	بيان
reader	قارىء	request	طلب	support	يؤيد
require	يتطلب	encourage	يشجع	debate	مناظرة
grammar	قواعد	warn	يحذر	effects	أثار
punctuation	ترقيم	advantages	مزايا	modern	حديث
appear	يظهر	merits	مزايا	society	مجتمع
disappear	يختفي	disadvantages	عيوب	rather than	بدلا من
emoji	إشعار	demerits	عيوب	Other than	بخلاف
frown	يتجهم	a joke	ينكت - نكتة	misunderstand	يسيء فهم
tips	نصائح	port	ميناء	reward	يكافيء
proper	لائق	ruin	يدمر	persuade	يقنع
confused	مشوش	headline	عنوان	profit	ربح
confusing	مربك	guard	حارس	stab	يطعن
mansion	قصر	pretend	يتظاهر	plot	يتآمر
Remain	يبقي	follow	يتبع	beggar	متسول
disbelief	كفر	faithful	مخلص		

Definitions

abbreviation	A short form of a word
emoji	Images with certain expressions used on messaging
formal	Official ; following an agreed or official way of doing things
innovator	A person who introduce new things
linguist	A person who knows several foreign languages well
tone	The change in your voice that shows what you are feeling or thinking.
misunderstand	Not understand properly
not necessarily	A response to something that has been said that may not be true or correct
to frown	To have an expression on your face that shows you are not happy
joke	Something that you say or do to make people laugh

messaging	To send a text message to somebody
response	A spoken or written answer
ruin	To damage something so badly that it loses all its value
Speed up	To move a long quickly .

Prepositions& expressions

suitable for	مناسب لـ	see you later	أراك فيما بعد
encourage to	يشجع علي	as soon as possible	بسرعة بقدر المستطاع
discourage from	يثبط الهمة	language innovator	مجدد في اللغة
pros and cons	مزايا وعيوب	text messages	رسائل نصية
worried about	قلق علي	stay in touch with	يبقي علي اتصال
get upset	ينزعج	lose touch with	يفقد اتصال مع

Synonyms and Antonyms

word	المعنى	synonym	antonym	المعنى
hope	يأمل	wish	despair	ييأس
formal	رسمي	official	informal	غير رسمي
understand	يفهم	grasp	misunderstand	يسيء الفهم
upset	متضايق	annoyed	Happy / content	سعيد
encourage	يشجع	support	discourage	يثبط
necessary	ضروري	essential	unnecessary	غير ضروري
negative	سلبي	passive	positive	إيجابي
disappear	يختفي	vanish	appear	يظهر
argument	جدال - خلاف	disagreement	agreement	اتفاق

Expressions

create new words	يبتكر مفردات جديدة	get lost	يضل الطريق
create new jobs	يوفر وظائف جديدة	get advice	يحصل علي نصيحة
create pollution	يسبب التلوث	get upset	ينزعج
include images	يتضمن صور	get……wrong	يفهم شيء خطأ
introduce a new idea	يقدم فكرة جديدة	do wrong	يرتكب خطأ
introduce a solution	يقدم حلا	in response to	استجابة لـ
feel special	يشعر بالتميز	at a different time	في وقت أخر
add some salt	يضيف بعض الملح	be aware of	علي وعي
be careful with	يحرص علي	keep in touch with	يبقي علي اتصال مع
be friends with	يكون صداقة مع	negative advice	نصح سلبي
couldn't stop crying	لم يستطع منع نفسه من البكاء	no longer able to	لم يعد قادرا علي
since = ever since	منذ ذلك الحين	a – 15- year old daughter	بنت تبلغ من العمر 15 عام
facial expressions	تعبيرات الوجه	Add a sub-heading	يضيف عنوانا فرعيا

Prepositions

warn …….. to + inf	يحذر …… ان	learn about	يتعلم عن
warn …….. not to	يحذر……الا	apply for	يتقدم بطلب
take …….. away	يبعد	agree with	يتفق مع شخص أو فكرة
put down	يترك	reply to	يرد على

حاجات لذيذة : هي صيغة مختصرة من الكلمات لتمثيل الكل فقط وهنا ليس شرط الحروف الأولي .

Abbreviations

الكلمة	Abbreviation	Meaning
You	U	أنت
Your	Ur	ملكك
Thanks	Thx	متشكر
Please	Plz	من فضلك
Great	Gr8	عظيم
Tomorrow	2 Moro	غدا

_ Thx is a more of (acronym _ _abbreviation) of thank you .
_ (Acronym _ Abbreviation) is a group of letters that refer to the beginning of the words

As soon as possible	ASAp	باسرع ما يمكن
The united states of America	U-S-A	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية
See you later	C U L8r	أراك لاحقا
I don't know	I d k	لست أدرى
Laugh out loud	L O L	يضحك بصوت عال

Don't get confused

photo	صورة يلتقطها شخص اخر	selfie	صورة يلتقطها الشخص بنفسه (له أو له و الاخرين
emoji	اموجن	blog	تغريدة على الانترنت
linguists	علماء اللغة	bloggers	المغردون
introduction	مقدمة	conclusion	خاتمة
headlines	عناوين اخبار	sub-headings	عناوين فرعيه
necessary	ضرورى	necessarily	بالضرورة
message	رسالة / يراسل	messaging	المراسلة
necessitate	يحتم	necessity	ضرورة

Abbreviation .

Abbreviate = Shorten (to) يختصر كلمة أو عبارة إلي
Abbreviated (to) = Short مختصر (إلي)
Abbreviation اختصار
Be the abbreviation of/for اختصار

_ The U.S.A is (abbreviate – abbreviated -an abbreviation) of the united states of America .
_ The president gave an (abbreviation – abbreviated) speech .
_The world health organization is abbreviated (of – to) who .

Communicate .

Communicate with يتواصل مع شخص **Communicate** in + لغة يتواصل بـ
Communicate to شيء ينتقل ....إلي **Communicate** = infect يعدي
Communicable = infections معدي **Communication** تواصل
Communications وسائل الاتصال **means** of **communication** وسائل الاتصال
System of communication نظام الاتصال

_ I always communicate (by – with) foreign people easily .
_ I hope to communicate (by _ in) English .
_ He has communicated the news (for _ to) us .
_ Flu is a (communication _ communicable) disease .
_ The internet has become one of the best means of (communicate _ communication)

Tone

Tone	نبرة الصوت	Tone	يشد – يقوي
Tone …..down	يخفف من/ يلطف حدة	Tune	لحن

_ I think his sharp (tone _ tune) will make me angry .
_ You must smile to tone the siheation (up _ down).
_ (Tone _Tune) is the musical sound inside the verse .
_ Her friendly (tune _ tone) encouraged me to ask her for help .

Mis

misgovern	يحكم	misuse	يسيء استخدام
misunderstand	يسيئ فهم	mistake	يخطيء

re

rewrite	يعيد كتابة	redo	يعيد فعل
reuse	يعيد تشغيل	replay	يعيد تشغيل

un

unlike	علي عكس	unchanged	ثابت
undo	يلغي . يتوقف	untidy	غير مرتب

Able

recognizable	يمكن التعرف عليه	changeable	قابل للتغيير
readable	قابل للقراءة	available	متاح

er تعطى اسم شخص

writer	كاتب	user	مستخدم
reader	قارئ	speaker	متحدث

Less

carless	مهمل	powerless	ضعيف
useless	بلا فائدة	endless	لانهايه لها

Make

make a comment	يعلق	make a joke	يعلق
make different sounds	يصدر أصواتا مختلفة	make new words	يبتكر كلمات جديده

make sense	يعطي معنى	make difference	يحدث تغييرا

Everyday

Everyday (adj) يومي وتأتي قبل الاسم

Everyday language لغه يوميه everyday use استخدام يومي Everyday life الحياه اليوميه

Every day (adv) يوميا وتأتي في بدايه او نهايه الجمله

-He plays football (every day- everyday).

-English has become part of our (everyday- every day) life.

Like

Like + اسم **alike** + لا يأتي بعدها اسم

1-like يفضل – يحب

-He (likes – alike) English very much.

2-like = for example مثال علي ذلك

-He has a lot of polite students (like- alike) Ramy and Samy.

3-Like = similar to يشبه به

-Mona is (like – alike) Heba, they are polite.

Alike = similar شبيه ولا يأتي بعدها اسم

Alike to = similar to شبيه ب

-Mona and Heba are (like – alike) they are short.

-Mona and Heba are (like – alike) to each other.

Like مثل **unlike** بخلاف

(Unlike – Like) his brother, he is tall.

لاحظ التركيبات الاتيه:

The \ a-an اسم الموصوف +صفه+ اسم مفرد +رقم

A 9-year-old boy ولد في سن التاسعه

a-an \ the اسم موصوف +اسم مفرد + رقم

-He is expert on the 20th century history.

a\ an اسم مفرد +"اسم جمع + رقم

-He attended a 3 days' cause.

اذا وجدنا timeفاننا نستخدم معها 's اسم مفرد

-He will leave in an hour's time.

-He will leave in two hours' time.

-other than بخلاف \ غير \ زياده علي \ بالاضافه الي

-rather than افضل من \ بدلا من

-You should be good at Arabic **other than** English.

-I suggest you study your lessons **rather than** play games on the mobile

©Frown عبوس \يشيح بوجهه \ يعبس **© Frown on** يمنع – يرفض \ لا يوافق
1- He frowned as he reread the letter.
2- On his face he wore a deep, permanent frown.
3- Personal phone calls are frowned on at work.

©Guard يحرس- حارس **© Guardian** وصي
1- There was an armed guard on duty outside his door.
2- They saw themselves as the guardians of morality. اوصياء علي الاخلاق

© Beggar شحاذ **©beg \ begged** يرجو – يترجي **©beggar belief** يعتقد اعتقاد لا يصدق
1- Beggars can't be choosers.
2- The stupidity of people sometimes beggars belief.

© Reward مكافأه **award** جائزة رسميه – يمنح **a ward** جناح – عنبر
1- The holiday was a reward for 40 years' service with the company.
2- He was awarded the Military star.
3- The children's ward is really neglected.

© Profit= benefit (from) ربح \ فائده \ عائد- يربح **make a profit** يربح – يكسب
4- It would profit us to change our plans.
5- This is an application of profits earned.
6- Profits rose 31% to £144 million.
7- Investors have made a 14% profit in just 3 months.
8- The profit on that deal was £21 million.
9- All the profits from the sales of the CD will go to the charitable Society.
10- They were buying goods and reselling them at a profit.
11- They kill whales for profit.

© Plot (n.)(v.) حبكه درامية – مؤمراة – مكيدة – يكيد – يتأمر **© plotter** متأمر
1- They make a plot against the government
2- The two men are accused of a plot to bomb an American plane.
3- Between them, they had hatched(made) a clever plot
to claim insurance money.

©Disbelief جحود – كفر – انكار **©disbeliever** منكر – كافر – جاحد
1- Public reaction to the announcement has been one of shock and disbelief.
2- An expression of disbelief crossed his face.
3- Liz stared at us in disbelief as we told her what had happened.

©Faithful- loyal – committed وفي – مخلص **faith (n.)** الايمان – الوفاء – الاخلاص
1- He had always been a faithful friend.
2- He remained faithful to his beliefs.
3- I'm delighted to know you have such faith in me.
4- The public have lost faith in what the government is doing.
5- Maybe we put too much faith in doctors and medicine.
6- The attack has destroyed his faith in humankind.

7- They seemed to accept everything he said with blind faith.

©Port ميناء(بري – بحري – جوي) © harbor رصيف ميناء

1- We'll have to spend 10 days in port for repairs.
2- New York is the busiest port on the East Coast.
3- The wind kept us in harbour until the following afternoon.

Personal شخصي personnel شئون الافراد والموظفين

1- My own personal view is that boxing should be banned.
2- She works in personnel.

Diary = journal مفكره ورقيه يوميات شخص blog مدونه على النت

1- She was angry when I read her diary
2- I present English lessons on my blog.

Reading (1)

Plz read this article ASAP. It's gr8. Hope u like it



For any readers who can't understand the language of text message, the translation is: Please read this article as soon as possible. It's great. I hope you like it.
In text message, abbreviations, emojis and numbers are all used to make communication quicker. The languages of text message doesn't require correct spelling, or difficult grammar and punctuation.
Messaging language is appearing in everyday English more often. When people write emails, many of them use a lot of abbreviations and emojis g.. some people use less punctuation, but others use more than they need!! Um.
So, is messaging language damaging English? Messaging language may be fun to use with friends, but it isn't suitable in formal emails. And now teachers are worried that some teenagers are no longer able to speak or write using English correctly. However, some Linguists suggest that the people who use messaging language are actually language innovators, introducing new ideas into English. They argue that messaging language is quick, short and communicates a lot in a small space.
Whether or not you like messaging language, English is continuing to change. Perhaps it would be a good idea to learn some of the basic abbreviations so you can enjoy talking to your friends with fun, short messages.

Shakespeare and the English language

Language is always changing, and new words are created all the time. We need new words to describe new technology, ideas and situations. For example, before people took photos of themselves on their phones, we didn't need a word for that. But when everyone started doing it, the word selfie became very useful, and it was added to dictionaries in 2013. Many famous dictionaries add new words every year, and sometimes they remove words and phrases that we don't use anymore.

Shakespeare was a great **innovator** with language, and he added more words and **phrases** into the English language than anyone else. He made new words by changing verbs into **adjectives**, changing nouns **into** verbs, and connecting words to make new words he also added **prefixes** and **suffixes**, for example, he created **uncomfortable** from **comfortable**.
Today the language that Shakespeare **used** can **sound difficult**, but he was writing in a way that made his stories easy for people to understand at that time.
Like messaging language, Shakespeare made new words from other words that everyone already knew. Then he used his words to describe the things that people most wanted to talk about.

Emoji fun!

Yesterday, **my four-year-old sister** sent her grandparents some **text message** from my phone. The problem is, there are no words, just a long line of **emojis**. This is **confusing** because our **grandparents** think the messages are from me! **Should** I **have taken** the phone away from my sister?When a child **begins** to learn how to speak, they first make **different** sounds. It seems that children do the same with **messaging**. They use **emojis** rather than **proper words** to **communicate** what they want to say.But is this a good thing? Yes! Young children are learning to **communicate**. **With** text messages, children can **receive** and read **replies** which are written just for them. I'm sure this will **make** them **feel special** and they will want to communicate more.So, **instead of** taking phones away from children, perhaps we should give them our phones more often and say, "**send** your **grandparents** a message".

Endless change

The Romans spoke a language **called Latin** and they first took it to the country they called **Britannia** almost two thousand years ago. However, the English language came from **Germany** when people called **Angles** and **Saxons** arrived about 500 years later. Soon the land of the Angles became known as England and the English that have been using and misusing foreign words ever since.For example, words like cake, eggs and happy all come from **Old Norse**, which was the language spoken by the Vikings who came to England a few years after the Angles. However, many more English words came from the French, who arrived in 1066.**Unlike** the poor people, who **continued** speaking English, all the rich and **powerful** people spoke French. That's why there are so many words in English with similar meanings. French words are **recognizable** because they usually describe something which is better. For example, the word house is an English word, but a big house is called a **mansion**, which is a French word.In the modern age, we often **reuse** old words from the past to make new **international** words for technology. For example, the first part of the word **helicopter** is Greek and the second part is Latin, but the word was first used by a **Russian** speaker living in America.

****

The aim of this report is to summarize the **findings** of the **survey** into the time students spend using social media.Between 2015 and 2020, we asked 1,200 students about the **amount** of time they spent using **social media**. We also asked them how they used social media, and what they liked and disliked about using it. We **records** our results and **compared** them.Most of the students that we **spoke to** were surprised by how much time they spent **on** social media when they thought about it **carefully**.
Many students thought that they were **spending** too much time on social media and some students said that they **would try** to spend less time on social media. Some students reported that **at least one** member of their family had made a **negative comment** about it.
However, almost all of the students reported that they enjoyed using social media and most of the students did not want to stop using it. Most students **used** social media on their **phones**. The students used social media to **keep in touch with** their friends, and to follow their interests or hobbies.**In general**, students enjoy social media and they are using it more often. However, it is making a small number of students worried because they feel that they are spending too much time on it.

Listening

A radio programme about messaging

Presenter: Hello everyone, thanks **for joining** me today on Afternoon **Talk time**. And today we are talking about messaging. My guest today is Dr **Magda** Morsy. She is the author of the book A Guide to messaging which encourages us **to** use messaging **positively**. Welcome **to** the programme, Magda.
Dr Magda: Thank you. **It's lovely to be here.**
Presenter: So, many parents are worried about their children and messaging. I myself have **a 15-year-old daughter** and we had an example of a messaging problem just yesterday when she **came down** to dinner **very upset**. She couldn't stop **crying**. **Eventually** she **admitted** that she was upset because of her friend.
They were messaging and having fun, but then **my** daughter, Talia, had written LOL – laugh out loud – in response to a photo her friend, Mona, had posted of herself. Talia thought it was a funny photo. She waited for an hour, but Mona didn't reply. Talia couldn't understand what the problem was and was worried that Mona was upset with her.
Dr Magda: This is a good example of why we need to be aware of the advantages and disadvantages of messaging, and how it can very easily make us worried and upset if we get it wrong.
Presenter: because messaging is **different to** speaking **face -to – face**, isn't it?
Dr Magda: Exactly! Sometimes face – to – face communication can be **confusing**, it's easy to feel the other person isn't listening for example, or isn't **interested in** what you are saying, but messaging can be much more **confusing**. And this is **basically** because you can't see the other person's face – is he or she **smiling** or **frowning**? And you can't hear their voice – are they angry? Are they **making** a **joke**? Are they **feeling sad**? And you can't see their body **movements**. When we speak to someone **face- to - face,** we **notice** all these things; **facial expressions**, **body movements** and the **tone** of

what they are saying. When we message, we have to **guess** a lot of these things. This means we can often **misunderstand** what the other person is trying to **communicate**.
Presenter: So, that's the **negative side** of **messaging**. Is there appositive side?
Dr Magda: yes, of course. Messaging is great for **staying in touch with** friends but remember that messaging is designed to be short and quick so don't expect to have long **conversations** , and don't get upset when you get one word or even an **abbreviation** or **acronym** as a response to your message.
Presenter: So, what should my daughter, Talia, have done yesterday evening?
Dr Magda? Well, first of all, she shouldn't have got **upset** so quickly. Just because you don't get an **immediate** reply does not **necessarily** mean that the person is not **interested** in **chatting with** you. People are **busy** and they have **got** other things to do. So, she **shouldn't have sat** in her room for an hour looking at have put her phone and waiting for Mona to reply. She should have put her phone later. And of course. If she was really worried, she could have called and spoken to Mona. She **could have messaged** and said, can I call you?
Presenter: So, I think Dr Magda is telling us to remember that sometimes more **traditional communication** is important.
Dr Magda: I am! **Absolutely**. Messaging is one **form** of communication not the **only** form of communication
Presenter: Great – thank you, Dr Magda Morsy. Next **on** the programme.

Speaker 1:
Tips on how to write a successful **blog** post
1-**start with your topic.** Think about what will **interest** and inform your reader.
2-**Start with a headline for your blog**. A **headline** should tell the reader what the blog is about. It should be short, give information, be interesting and make the reader want to read the rest of the blog.
3-**Find a suitable photo or picture** that will show the reader what the blog post is about,
4-**plan the sections of your blog.** Add **sub-heading** for each section \ new point.
5-**Write your introduction paragraph**. Be clear what the purpose of this blog post is. Speak to the reader – use first and third person. Include a question.
6-**Write the main body of the blog**. Keep sentences and paragraphs short. Include images where useful. Do research to find facts to include.
7-**Write a conclusion.** Refer back to your headline and your introduction. Do not include new information in your conclusion. Speak to your reader again and include yourself; use "we".
8-**Read and correct your blog post.** Check spelling, grammar and punctuation. Check that you have not **respected** key ideas too **frequently**. Use an online **thesaurus** to avoid repeating the same word too many times.
9-**Ask a friend to read your blog post.** Does it make sense to them?
10-**cite** all your sources of information.

Video script

Smartphones are changing the way we choose to **communicate with** each other.
More people use their phones to send and **receive** message than they do to make phone calls.
Messaging is quick and cheap. We can **keep in contact** with friends, make and **check arrangements**, send photos, ask questions and **receive** answers within seconds.
Messaging is now more **popular** than emails, **especially** between friends and family.
Messaging **increased** by 7,000 % in the ten years between 2007 and 2017 and is still **rising**. Reports suggest that more than 560 billion text message **are sent** around the world every month. And it seems that **teenagers** send more than most adults.
Staying in contact with people is really important and messaging is a fun way to do this, but we need to remember that text messaging is not the same as having a **conversation** or spending time with someone: that's **important too**.

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1-The popularity of text……….has brought unexpected gains to mobile network owners.
a-messaging **b-form** **c-page** **d-topic**

2-When I text a word tomorrow on a chat on What's App or SMS. I write…………….
a-2mazo **b-plz** **c-thx** **d-idk**

3-The new application enables the mobile users to send…………………..messages to a lot of people at the same time.
a-magnetic **b-text** **c-electrical** **d-toxic**

4-When you want to write a polite request expression at the end of a sentence on phone message or a chat, you can type the abbreviation.
a-LoL **b-plz** **c-ASAP** **d-gr8**

5-The abbreviation of the adjective "great" in social media and internet language is……….
a-ASAP **b-gr8** **c-thx** **d-plz**

6-When you send a \ an …………you can also send a sound or graphic file as an attachment.
a-sigs **b-mark** **c-telegram** **d-e-mail**

7-The doctors were ……….that the patient might have suffered brain damage.
a-pleased **b-thankful** **c-worried** **d-blissful**

8-Ahmed works in a certified …………center that translates official papers that are submitted to the embassies.
a-place **b-presentation** **c-abbreviation** **d-translation**

9-Don't …………with your sister. Sit down and discuss your problems.
a-worry **b-agree** **c-argue** **d-appear**

10-Dr.Zewail was a\ an ……….as he presented many new ideas in the field of chemistry.
a-idiot **b-innovator** **c-philosopher** **d-linguist**

11-never knew that the …………"Amt" stood for "amount".
a-acronym **b-emoji** **c-abbreviation** **d-antonym**

12-Are you sure you didn't……….him? He can't have said that.
a-undermine **b-practise** **c-undergo** **d-misunderstand**

13-You must………….your computer password frequently so that no stranger can use your personal information.
a-interchange **b-change** **c-intercode** **d-exchange**

14-Just because a film has a cast of well-known actors, it does not…..mean it will be successful.
a-necessarily b-unimportantly c-violently d-unnecessarily
15-They have to have a …….understanding of computers in order to use the advanced technology.
a-basic b-lazy c-busy d-fussy
16-She's a very impatient person. She wants everything done……………………
a-in vain b-immediately c-carelessly d-later
17-The lack of rain………severe shortages of fresh fruit and vegetables.
a-created b-issued c-reduced d-frowned
18-The sales assistants are trained to deal………customer complaints in a friendly manner.
a-up b-for c-against d-with
19-I must look up this word in the……., because I don't remember what it means.
a-essay b-catalogue c-dictionary d-language
20-Wifi is a system for……..electronic devices to the internet without using wires.
a-contacting b-connecting c-contracting d-communicating
21-Mahmoud I used to……… turned against me after being told that I'd been insulting him.
a-be an enemy with b-make a friend by
c-have a friend with d-be friends with
22-She criticized my writing, but…………that was very constructive. I learned a lot from her.
a-on a way b-by the system c-in a way d-in which it
23-The report can be traditionally divided into three main……………
a-spaces b-sections c-words d-sentences
24-It is said that dolphins use sound to……….with each other.
a-contact b-connect c-communicate d- link
25-Mohames ……..angrily when he read the letter that the office sent him.
a-smiled b-rewarded c-frowned d-introduced
26-All staff members are expected to attend the next important ….about the company's **future.**
a-conference b-interview c-meeting d-appointment
27-Some distant villages in Africa lack………services such as water and electricity.
a-minor b-unimportant c-trivial d-basic
28-My father believes that religion had a …………influence on our society as it helps implanting morals.
a-perplexing b-passive c-positive d-negative
29-The house where my………lived is being demolished because it was old.
a-grandchildren b-sons c-grandparents d-visitors
30-A lot of people believe that the computer is the most important………………invention.
a-designed b-modern c-ancient d-devised
31-This…………..of the hypermarket sells meat products like hot dogs and burgers.
a-college b-centre c-section d-sale
32-My aunt became ill and had to retire as a teacher before reaching the……of 62.
a-number b-age c-decade d-era
33-Scientists …………the results of both scientific experiments carefully.
a-completed b-compared c-conducted d-coded

34-The young painter paints real…………of working-class communities.
a-photos b-images c-accounts d-description
35-I recommend that you buy a more…………..computer to get the project ready soon.
a-helpless b-ancient c-updated powerful
36-The bird is easily…………because of its bright red feathers.
a-recognize b-recognition c-recognizable d-unrecognized
37-The winter puts enough detail into the story to make it……….
a-interest b-interested c-interesting d-unintended
38-The journalists who attended the conference ………..notes of the most important points.
a-filled b-drew c-gave d-took
39-I don't have any suit which is suitable………..the party.
a-for b-about c-on d-over
40-The noun "analysis" is a synonym to the noun…………
a-intention b-application c-diploma d-survey

Grammar

REPORTED IMPERATIVES, SUGGESTIONS AND ADVICE

الأمـــــــر و الاقتـــراح و النصيحـــــــة في الغيـــر مباشـــر

Don't forget

• encourage … to / not to + inf	• warn … to / not to + inf
• ask … to / not to + inf	• advise … to/not to + inf
• allow ………… to / not to + inf	• order ………… to / not to + inf
• agree to + inf	• tell ………… to / not to + inf

• Suggest + v-ing	• Suggest that فاعل should + inf
• Recommend + v-ing	• Recommend that فاعل should + inf

- يتم تحويل الأمـــــر و الاقتراح و النصيحة إلي الغير المباشر باستخدام:

فعل قول مناسب + مفعول + (not) to + infinitive

- "Open your books." - The teacher **told / asked / ordered us to open** our books.
- "Don't waste time." - My father **advised** me **not to waste** time.
- "Study science at university." - Ali **encouraged his friend to study** science at university.
- "If I were you, I'd take your coat." - My **mother advised me to take** my coat.

(that) و لكـــن يأتي بعده (جملـــة كاملـــة + say) بعد الفعل (to+ -لا نستخدم (مصدر

- "Don't park there." -The policeman **said that** we must not park there.

(v.ing) يأتي بعدهمـــا (suggest / recommend)- أفعال القـــول)

- "Do Exercise 2 again." - Leila **suggested doing / that I do** Exercise 2 again.
- "You should revise quietly." - My friend **recommended revising / that I revise** quietly

(that) يمكـــن أن يأتي بعدهما (المصدر + فاعل + suggest / recommend)- أفعال القـــول)

- "Do Exercise 2 again." - Leila **suggested (that) I do** Exercise 2 again.

- أفعال القـــول (suggest / recommend) يمكـــن أن يأتي بعدهما (المصدر + should + فاعل + that)

- “You should revise quietly.” - My friend **recommended that I should revise** quietly

- يتم اختيار فعل قول مناسب للجملة من حيث المعني: لاحظ الأمثلة الآتية

- The doctor said to me, "Stop smoking!". - The doctor **told me to stop smoking**.
- "Get out of the car!" said the policeman. - The policeman **ordered him to get out** of the car.
- "Could you please be quiet," she said. - She **asked me to be** quiet.
- The man with the gun said to us, "Don't move!"
- The man with the gun **warned us not to move**.

- أحيانا يمكن تحويل الأمـــــر في غير المباشر إلي (asked for + مفعول)

- "Can I have an apple?", she asked. - She **asked for** an apple.
- "Can I have the newspaper, please?" - He **asked for** the newspaper.
- "May I have a glass of water?" he said. - He **asked for** a glass of water.
- "Sugar, please." - She **asked for** the sugar.
- "Could I have three kilos of onions?" - He **asked for** three kilos of onions.

- يمكـــن التعبيـــر عن النصـــح بأكثـــر من طريقــــة

- **You should** take some exercise. - **You ought to** eat more fruit and vegetables.
- **Why don't you** go jogging? - **How about** eat**ing** less sugary food?
- If I were you, I would revise my lessons regularly.

- يمكـــن التعبيـــر عن النصـــح بقـوة باستخدام ('have to' - 'must')

- **You must** see a doctor - **You have to** take her to see that movie. She'll love it!

- يمكـــن التعبيـــر عن النصـــح بجملـــة أمريـــة تبدأ بالمصدر

- **Start** go**ing** to the gym. - **Stop** drink**ing** so much coke.
- **Consider** switch**ing** to brown bread and rice. - **Try** cycl**ing** to work.

- كل طرق التعبير عن النصح يتم تحويلها في غير المباشر إلي (advise + مفعول (not) to + مصدر)

- If I were you, I would revise my lessons regularly.
- He **advised me to revise** my lessons regularly.
- We said to her**, "You must** see a doctor." - **We advised her** to see a doctor.

Mini Test Grammar (1)

1-Our leader instructed us…………our safety precautions.

a-take b-be take d-to take

2-My father encouraged me………………hard.

a-to study b-studying d-to study

3-Ola advised Reham…………the hotel her CV

a-not sending b-to send d-send

4-My friend…………..me to attend his party.

a-ordered b-advised c-invited

5-The doctor……………….me to stay in bed for some time.

a-taught b-advised c-expected

6-The fire fighter warned us……………..near the fire.

a-not to come b-coming d-come

7-He told me……………..my mother.

a-to help b-helped c-help

Should / ought to ينبغي \يجب

-1-تستخدم should –ought to لاعطاء النصيحة:

Subj.+should/shouldn't+inf
Subj.+ought to/ought not to(oughtn't) to +inf

- You **should** work hard to achieve your goal . you **shouldn't waste** your time
- One **ought to** keep fit . he or she **ought not to** eat unhealthy food

-2كما تستخدم should-ought to لتوجيه اللوم او التعبير عن الندم لعدم القيام في الماضي بشء كان من المفترض القيام به :

Subj.+should /ought to +have +p.p

I should have taken my medicine on time ندم-كان يجب ان افعل
you ought to have arrived early لو م–كان يجب القيام بذلك

-3وتستخدم shouldn't– ought not to لتوجيه اللوم او التعبير عن الندم للقيام بشئ في الماضي كان من المفترض عدم القيام به:

Subj.+shouldn't/ought not (oughtn't)to+have+p.p

I oughtn't to have shouted at my sister ندم-كان يجب الا افعل ذلك
you shouldn't have added too much salt لوم-كان من المفترد عدم القيام بذلك
عندما نجد had to/should have +p.p في اختيار واحد

Should have +p.p	كان يجب ان يفعل و لكنه لم يفعل و هنا اللوم
Had to+inf	كان مضطرا ان يفعل اي انه فعل و هنا ضرورة حدوث شئ في الماضي

1-He(**should have borrowed**-**had to borrow**)some money from his brother . he borrowed from his friend
2-He (should have borrowed-**had to borrow**)some money from his brother but he gave him just half of the sum

نستخدم Should بعد why للاستفسار عن سبب الالزام

Why should I pay extra? لماذا ينبغي ان ادفع زياده؟
Why shouldn't we ask questions during the meeting?

الصيغة المستمره في Should
Should be +v -ing **Ought to be +v-ing**

وتشير هذه الصيغه ان الفاعل لا يتصرف بشكل جيد
-Mona ought to be studying now.
اي انها تفعل شئ اخر الان
--Ramy shouldn't be spending money like so.
اي انه ينفق الاموال بشكل مسرف

Should +inf = be meant to +inf

☯-He is meant to be in the meeting
☯-He should be at the meeting.
💣-You shouldn’t make noise.
💣-You aren’t meant to make noise.

Mini Test should

1-they are our best friends. They…….be invited to the party.
a-can’t **b-should** **c-shouldn’t**
2-Ahmed……….to be at home by now. He is probably at home.
a-should **b-shouldn’t** **c-ought**
3-You…………your friend yesterday. He was in a problem.
a-should help **b-should have helped** **c-ought have helped**
4-He……….have worn such heavy clothes. It wasn’t very cold.
a-should **b-ought to** **c-shouldn’t**
5-He should be………………now instead of playing.
a-studied **b-study** **c-studying**
6-The report should be………………now.
a-written **b-writes** **c-writing**
7-Now you have failed. You…………..your time when you had the time.
a-shouldn’t waste **b-shouldn’t have wasted** **c-should have wasted**
8-You should have……………..me about the time of the meeting.
a-tell **b-told** **c-be told**

Deduction الاستنتاج

الاستنتاج يعنى الاستنباط من خلال دليل قوى أو ضعيف فى الحاضر أو الماضى و يتلخص الاستنتاج فى الآتى:-

must + inf	أكيد	⟶ ماضى	**must have + p.p**
can't + inf	لا يمكن	⟶	**can't / couldn't have + p.p**

الفارق بين كلمة must , can't هو المعنى مثل :-

- He gets up early he (must -can't) be active " **must** "
- He plays well, he (must -can't) have trained badly. " **can't** "
- My father (must -can't) have walked to work this morning his car is still in the garage ." **must** "
- Ali wasn't at the meeting, he (must -can't) have read my e-mail to come. " **can't** "
- You (must -can't) have finished that book already, you have just bought it yesterday and it's long. " **can't** "

و كذلك المعنى يلعب دورا بالنسبة للمضارع و الماضى

- Ali is absent today he must (**be** – have been) ill.
- Ali was absent yesterday he must (be – **have been**) ill.
- Dr. Mazen is a good professor, he must (be – **have been**) a good student .
- I can't find my keys, Aml must (take – **have taken**) them .
- I can't find my wallet, it must (take – have taken – **have been taken**) by a thief .

هناك كلمات تعطى الإشارة لـ must مثل:-

Sure , certain , definitely
☺He must be a doctor = I'm sure he is a doctor.
☸He must have gone = I'm certain he went

هناك كلمات للإشارة لـــ can't

Sure , certain , definitely + نفى / impossible

- **He can't have passed the exam** = It's impossible that he passed the exam.
- It ……… windy last night there are broken trees.

a) must be b) **must have been** c) can't be d) can't have been

- Surely, they must (use – used – **have used**) many slaves to dig the suez canal.
- He is an honest man, he ……… stolen it.

a) should have b) **can't have** c) must have d) might have

- Ali ……… forgotten the date, he's get a very good memory.

a) might have b) must have c) **can't have** d) can't be

may, might , could + inf ماضى may, could , might have + p.p

و تعنى احتمال أو شك فى حدوث الشيئ .

It's possible , it's probable , I'm less certain, I'm not sure, perhaps - I doubt it.

- He (must – **might**) have rung. I'm not sure .
- She may (**go** – have gone) to Alex. I doubt that he will do .

May , could + inf احتمال بنسبة 50٪ Might have + p.p احتمال بنسبة 30٪

عندما نجد **haven't decided yet / don't think so** يفضل استخدام **might** المثبتة او **may not** المنفية

- He (may – **might** – could) join the faculty of pharmacy, he hasn't decided yet.
- He (**may** – might – must) have played, I'm not sure .

Could have + p.p = may / might have + p.p احتمال

Could have + p.p كان من الممكن أن يفعل و لكن لم يفعل

- He travelled by train but he (must – **could** – may) have travelled by plane .

Should + inf يجب should have + p.p كان يجب

Should not + inf لا يجب shouldn't have + p.p لم يكن يجب و لكنه فعل

- Nour is late for school she ……… have stayed up late last night .

a) mustn't b) can't c) **shouldn't**

ملاحظات خفيفة للطلبة الظريفة

Mustn't have +p.p 1-:لا يوجد شيى فى اللغة الانجليزية اسمة

Can have +p.p لا يوجد شيى فى اللغة الانجليزية

- You **mustn't** have finished that book already (**can't**)
- He **can** have run yesterday (**might**)

2-- أحيانا يمكن أن تعبر الجملة عن الاستمرار وفي هذه الحالة نستخدم

- must / can't / may/ might / could+ be + v.ing

- What is Ali doing in his room? - I'm not sure. He may be studying.

- must / can't / may/ might / could+ have been + v.ing

- What was Linda doing? - She must have been working on her computer.

- Should / ought to يجـــب أن

- تستخدم هذه الأفعال لإعطاء النصائح

- In summer, tourists **should wear** a hat and **ought not to sit** in the sun.

- You should take a rest. = It is a good idea to take a rest.

should have / ought to have + p.p. ____________________________________ كان يجب أن

- تستخدم هذه الأفعـــال عندما نوجه اللوم لشخص لعدم قيامه بعمل معين كان يفترض القيام به

Should not have / ought not (to) have + p.p. ____________________________ كان لا يجب أن

ought not (to) have + p.p ____ to يمكن الاستغناء عن

- تستخدم هذه الأفعـــال عندما نوجه اللوم لشخص لقيامه بعمل معين كان يفترض عدم القيام به

- You **shouldn't have arrived** late for your exam.
- I'm sorry! I **ought to have come** on time.

Mini test possibility

1-she is late. She……….have taken wrong

a-might not b-may c-should

2-He…………..a lawyer, but he didn't and lost the case.

a-consulted b-must have consulted c-could have consulted

3-Ramy……………his exam as he seems to be happy.

a-could pass b-could have passed c-can't have passed

4-I……….more quickly if my suitcase hadn't been heavy.

a-can walk b-could have walked c-should walk

5-You……the bus if you had been here at 1 o'clock but it's gone now and it's too late.

a-could have caught b-shouldn't have caught c-might catch

6-He looks tried. He………have been a wake all night.

a-might b-can't c-couldn't

7-He……………been working in the garage when we arrived that might be why he didn't hear the bell.

a-could have b-shouldn't have c-can't have

8-Tom walked into a wall. He…………..have been looking where he was going.

a-couldn't b-might c-could

Exercises on Grammar

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1-He……….have asked me before he took my bike. I'm annoyed.

a-oughtn't b-should c-needn't d-must

2-He………have been a great doctor. He had the ability but he didn't want to work.

a-can't b-must c-could d-might

3-Ali…………..have forgotten about the meeting. I told him this morning.

a-can't b-must c-might d-should

4-You……………have been rude to him. He's going to be really angry now.

a-shouldn't b-couldn't c-can't d-should

5-We…have donated some money to the poor. It was the right thing to do but we didn't do it.

a-ought to b-shouldn't c-must d-might

6-I……..have eaten so much chocolate! I feel sick.

a-couldn't b-could c-should d-shouldn't

7-He……….have been more tolerant. Everyone was angry with him.

a-must b-ought to c-shouldn't d-might

8-He …………have finished his exams yet. I'm not sure.

a-might not b-can't c-must d-should

9-Don't ring the doorbell when you get there. Ola's little baby…………..sleeping.

a-must be b-should be c-may not be d-may be

10-Now, you're in a bad need of money. You……….saving money years ago!

a-should have started b-could start
c-must have started d-might have started

11-Noha…………have left earlier. She missed her flight.

a-might b-must c-should d-shouldn't

12-Our neighbors……..have cut down the tree in their garden. It was a really beautiful tree.

a-should b-couldn't c-can't d-shouldn't

13-You……him so much money when he asked. It will take you a lot of time to get it back.

a-should have lent b-shouldn't have lent c-should lend d-shouldn't be lent

14-They……………raised the price of essential articles. That was not right.

a-should not have b-should not be c-should have d-should

15-I don't like geography. I …………..math.

a-should have studied b-shouldn't study c-should studying d-should be studied

16-We got lost in Paris. We…………….a map

a-shouldn't take b-should have taken c-should be d-should take

17-You……….checked your report thoroughly before you handed it in.

a-could be b-should have c-shouldn't be d-couldn't

18-I……………practiced playing the piano last week, but I was lazy and now I regret.

a-shouldn't have b-should have c-should have been c-shouldn't have been

19-You…..caught the boat if you had been here at one o'clock but it's gone now and it is too late.

a-should have been b-could have been c-shouldn't have d-could have

20-He……………harder, but he was too lazy and that's why he failed the exam.

a-could study b-should study c-may study d-could have studied

21-He……….to bed early instead of playing videos games with his friends.

a-should not go b-should be gone c-should be went d-should have gone

22-I…………married her when I had the chance.

a-should be b-should c-shouldn't be d-should have

23-Haven't they given you the money back yet? They……….it last Monday.

a-should have done b-should be done c-shouldn't do d-should have been

24-The flowers died, I should…………them more often.

a-have watered b-water c-be watered c-be watering

25-That was a very idea. You……………that

a-could have done b-won't do c-should not do d-shouldn't have done

26-I'm really tried today. I……………stayed awake so late last night.

a-should not have b-should not be c-could have d-could not have

27-It's getting cold. We…………….brought our jackets.

a-should not be b-should have c-should be d-should being

28-She…………the test if she had studied harder.

a-will have passed b-could pass c-could be passed d-could have passed

Unit 5 Being smart online

smart	ذكي - أنيق	download	ينزل
research	يبحث - بحث	take down	يزيل
task	مهمة	excuse	عذر
avoid	يتجنب	upgrade	تحديث
unhelpful	غير متعاون	upload	يحمل
effectively	بفاعلية	banner	شعار
a company	شركة	cookies	كوكيز
experience	خبرة	advert	إعلان
knowledge	معرفة	advertise	يعلن
topic	موضوع	advertiser	معلن
Up- to -date	حديث	sponsor	راعي
reliable	موثوق فيه	target	هدف
update	يحدث	views	مشاهدات
consult	يستشير	comment	تعليق
extra	إضافي	specific	محدد
facts	حقائق	seem	يبدو
uniform	موحد	suppose	يفترض
resources	موارد	mean	يعني
image	صورة	social	اجتماعي
discussion	مناقشة	media	إعلام
wonderful	رائع	app	تطبيق
locate	يحدد موقع	survey	فحص-مسح
behaviour	سلوك	journalist	صحفي
profile	ملف	publish	ينشر
sensible	عاقل	sociology	علم اجتماع
symbol	رمز	influence	تأثير
include	يشمل	fake	يزيف - زائف
entertain	يسلي	musician	موسيقار
post	يرسل علي النت	spread	ينشر
rank	يصنف	register	يسجل
presentation	عرض	represent	يمثل
a set of	مجموعة من	highlight	يلقي ضوء
rules	قواعد	general	عام
digital	رقمية	link	يربط
footprints	أثار قدم	apologise	يعتذر
security	الأمن	double	يضاعف
subscribe	يشترك	patience	الصبر

private	خاص	go mad	يتجنن
follower	متابع	room	مكان
details	تفاصيل	shelter	مأوي-يأوي
install	يركب	interest	يهم - اهتمام
version	نسخة	spies	جواسيس
access to	اقتراب من	disagreement	عدم اتفاق
print	يطبع	set eyes on	ينظر

Definitions تعريفات

consult	To ask somebody for advice
reliable	That can be trusted to do something well ; that you can rely on
update	To make something more modern and relevant by adding new information
Up-to-date	Modern / fashionable / having or including the most recent information
download	To move files from the internet to a phone , tablet or a computer
take down	To remove a message or photo you have put on social media
upgrade	To improve or make more efficient
upload	To move files from a computer , phone or camera to the internet
banner advert	An advertisement across the top or bottom or down the side of a page
cookies	Small pieces of information
search result	The result you get after searching for it on the internet
sponsored advert	To support an advertisement by paying for its cost
profile	A description of somebody that gives useful information
sensible	Able to make good judgments based on reason and experience rather than emotion
symbol	A person , an object , an event , etc , that represents a more general quality
behaviour	The way that somebody behaves, especially towards other people .

Antonyms

download	ينزل من الانترنت	upload	يرفع علي الانترنت
follow	يتابع	block	يحظر
follow	يتبع	break	يخالف
online	متصل بالانترنت	offline	غير متصل بالانتنرت
reliable	موثوق ب	unreliable	غير موثوق ب
stupid	غني	intelligent	ذكي
specific	محدد	general	عام
suitable	مناسب	unsuitable	غير مناسب

Synonyms

reliable	يعتمد عليه	dependable-trustworthy-honest
sensible	حكيم-عقلاني	rational-logical-reasonable
upgrade	يحسن	improve-enhance
up-to-date	محدث	modern-fashionable
forages	لفتره طويله	for along time

1-This shirt is suitable for me the antonym of suitable is……………..
a-imsuitable b-unsuitable d-irsuitable

2-The synonym of modern is………….
a-out-of-date b-up-to-date c-date

3-He is a dependable person it means he is……….
a-liar b-reliable c-dishonest

4-He is a sensible person, he is not ……………
a-intelligent b-player c-foolish

5-You should obey the rules, it means you should………..them.
a-follow b-break c-buy

6-He has a negative answer not a ………..one.
a-cons b-pros c-positive

7-You can't post on the internet as you are……………
a-by line b-offline c-highline

8-I haven't met him for along time, for a long time can be replaces by for……………..
a-since b-ages c-time

prepositions

adapt ………..**to**	يكيف.........مع	put **up**	يرفع | يضع
addict **to**	يدمن	read **on**	يستمر في القراءه
apply **for**	يتقدم بطلب.............	sell….**to**	يبيع...........ل
chat **to \ with**	يدردش مع	share……**with**	يشارك ....مع
find **out**	يكتشف	take **down**	يزيل منشور
go **out**	يخرج		

-I can adapt this student…………….the new school.
a-by b-for c-to

-You shouldn't put……………….your personal life on the internet.

a-for b-up c-on

-I will chat……………….you tonight.

a-by b-with c-off

Expressions

check my sources	اتحقق من مصادري	go online	يدخل علي الانترنت
name the sources	يذكر المصادر	do a task	يؤدى مهمه
do a post	يقوم بعمل مدونه	give…….a task	يعطى ....مهمه
pay attention to	ينتبه ل	do\ create an essay	يكتب مقال
game online	يلعب علي الانترنت	seem obvious	يبدو واضحا
have an access to	لديه مدخل \ سبيل نحو		

1-The answer of the question……………..obvious.

a-plays **b-does** **c-seems**

2-I'll……………a perfect essay to you.

a-make **b-create** **c-conduct**

3-The student will…………this task.

a-do **b-make** **c-run**

4-I'm sick of study, I'll ……………..on line.

a-make **b-go** **c-do**

5-Mona has……………to technology.

a-accept **b-except** **c-access**

6-can you……………….online.

a-sport **b-game** **c-make**

7-you must…………..attention to them.

a-make **b-paid** **c-pay**

8-I have…………an important post.

a-made **b-done** **c-played**

9-you are honest as you………….your sources.

a-name **b-call** **c-hide**

sensible-sensitive

sensible عقلاني -حكيم-معقول

sensible man = wise man sensible idea=reasonable idea

sensitive حساس -مرهف الحس- عنده حساسيه

-He is a ……………….man, he always gives good ideas.

a-sense **b-sensitive** **c-sensible**

-She is……………..to egg and fish.

a-sense **b-sensible** **c-sensitive**

Don't get confused

update	يحدث	upgrade	يحسن (يضيف مزايا)
software	برامج	hardware	مكونات الجهاز
announcement	اعلان (بيان)	advertisement	اعلان
app=application	تطبيق برنامج	application	طلب التحاق

commerce	تجارة	commercial	اعلان تجاري (في الراديو او التلفزيون)
update	يحدث(يجعل الشئ حديث)	upgrade	يحسن (يضيف مزايا)
download from	ينزل من علي الانترنت	upload to	يرفع الي الانترنت
rely on	يعتمد علي	reliable	يعتمد عليه
reliability	الدقة	reliance	الاعتماد
follow	يتبع	follower	متبع
profile	البروفايل	symbol	رمز
like	يحب	take down	يزيل
fake	مزيف	downloadable	قابل للنزول
district	مركز	district	يشتت
up-to-date	حديث	old fashioned	قديم
sponsored	ممول	free	مجاني
file	ملف	version	اصدار
install	يثبت	share	يشارك
research	يجري بحث علي	search	يفتش
chat	يدردش	fire	يطرد

1-(Software- hardware) are the parts of the device.
2-(Software- hardware) are the programmes of the device.
3-My face book account always requires me to(update- upgrade) my personal data.

More Language notes

Experience (لا تعد) خبرة experiences تجارب حياتيه \ مواقف اسم يعد experiment تجربة معل

He had much experience in education.
His experiences in France were depressing.
The students did an experiment in the lab.

Effective مؤثر فعال impressive مؤثر يترك انطباع affecting يثير شجن (مؤثر)

They made an effective cure for corona virus
Our trip to Aswan was very impressive
She cried a lot as the scene in the film was very affecting.

Publish ينشر (مطبوعات) spread (حريق \ مرض \ وباء \ حريق) ينتشر

This book was published in 2010.
The fire spread fast through the village .
Corona virus spread fast among the people all over the world .
He is spreading rumours about me. He envies me a lot.

Each / Every

يمكن أن نستخدم each = every بنفس المعني:

- I water the plants **every day**. = I water the plants **each day**.

نستخدم each للإشارة الي اثنين أو أكثر بينما تشير every الي ثلاثة أو أكثر:

- **She had clearly been in a fight. She had bruises on each leg and cuts on each arm (each leg = both legs/ each arm = both arms)**
- **My parents have moved to the capital. Each of them works in a bank. (OR They both work…, / They each work**
- **He was holding a gun in each hand / in both hands.**

تستخدم each عندما نفكر في أعضاء مجموعة ما كأفراد وتستخدم every عندما نفكر فيهم كوحدة واحدة:

- Every third-year student will be examined orally in June. They will each be given a fifteen minute interview.
- I gave each of my three brothers a card.
- Every citizen has a role in society.

تستخدم every في حالة وجود الكلمات almost/nearly/practically

• This year I have visited practically every country in South-East Asia.

يستخدم بعد each of اسم جمع:

• Each of the students was given a prize.

تستخدم of بعد every اذا جاء بعدها كلمة one أو كلمات مثل part/piece/member

• every part of the country/every piece of the cake/every member of the team.

تستخدم every one of للأشخاص والأشياء بينما تستخدم everyone للأشخاص فقط:

• Every one of the students has a bike.
• Everyone enjoyed themselves on the beach.

يمكن أن تستخدم each قبل الفعل أو في نهاية الجملة:

• How much are these books? – They each cost $30 / =They cost $30 each.

Load يحمل \ حموله \ عبء unload يفرغ حموله overload يفرط في التحميل

download ينزل من النت upload يرفع علي النت

1. Women skillfully carry heavy **loads** on their heads.
2. She hadn't finished **unloading** the car.
3. both boats were **overloaded** and low in the water.
4. It would be wise to **download** your program to another computer before testing it.
5. Software is **uploaded** and **downloaded**.

Platform منبر \ منصة اكترونية \ رصيف قطار **pavement** رصيف شارع **sidewalk** رصيف مشاة

Source: المصدر الذي نحصل منه على المادة أو الشيء أو المعلومة أو .. الخ وقد يكون مكانًا أو إنسانًا.

Resources: الموارد (المواد أو الأشخاص أو غيرها) التي نحتاج إليها لتحقيق هدف ما.

- **Local authorities complained that they lacked resources.**
- Mackerel is a good **source** of fish oil.

Resourceful man رجل كل العصور والمواقف

❖ **Sensible** حكيم **sensitive** حساس

- **He rarely makes mistakes. He is really sensible**
- **Try to deal with him carefully. He is very sensitive.**

Skim: قراءة سريعه لاخذفكرة النص دون التفاصيل **Scanning** قراءة بغرض معرفة تفاصيل معينه

seminar, symposium, colloquy ندوة **Conference** مؤتمر

room = space فراغ **a room** غرفه

⏭ smart ذكي ⏭ smart village قرية ذكية ⏭ smart phone تليفون ذكي ⏭ smart country دولة ذكية
⏭ research بحث ⏭ do research into = research into يبحث في
⏭ avoid + v+ ing ⏭ You should avoid accompanying bad people .

⏭ influence / effect / impact تأثير ⏭ Shakespeare was an influential writer كاتب مؤثر
⏭ effective فعال ⏭ you should take part in the race effectively بفاعلية

⏭ share يشارك = participate = take part in ⏭ effective participation مشاركة فعالة

⏭ accompany يصطحب ⏭ company صحبة ⏭ a company شركة = a firm

⏭ rely on يعتمد على ⏭ reliable موثوق – جدير بالثقة ⏭ unreliable غير جدير بالثقة
⏭ reliance اتكال – اعتماد = dependence ⏭ reliability = confidence ثقة

⏭ consult يستشير ⏭ I consult my lawyer in some cases ⏭ consultant مستشار

⏭ aim يهدف - هدف ⏭ a goal هدف في المرمى ⏭ a goal هدف في الحياة ⏭ a target هدف

⏭ apply for يتقدم لوظيفة ⏭ applicant متقدم لوظيفة ⏭ apply يطبق ⏭ application تطبيق

⏭behave يتصرف = conduct ⏭ behave yourself تأدب ⏭ behaviour = conduct سلوك

⏭ symbolize يرمز ⏭ symbol رمز ⏭ The statue of liberty is the symbol of freedom

⏭ slogan / motto شعار ⏭ a campaign slogan شعار الحملة /
⏭ a banner راية – علم ⏭ A huge banner over the street said " Welcome home"

⏭ sensible idea فكرة معقولة ⏭ sensible shoes (useful rather than fashionable)

⏭ digital رقمي (a digital camera / digital terrestrial ارضي and digital satellite)

⏭ private property ممتلكات خاصة ⏭ special خاص exceptional (special circumstances)

⏭ register يسجل ⏭ I want to register my new car tomorrow .
⏭ score يسجل (a goal – a point) ⏭ record (Voices or sounds)

⏭ experiment تجربة معملية ⏭ an experience يجرب ⏭ experience يجرب ⏭ experience خبرة

Reading 1

Your teacher has given you a homework **task**. Where do you start your research? The internet is very **useful with** lots of information, but how do you avoid **spending** hours **reading** unhelpful websites? Read on to find out how to use the internet **effectively**.

1-**Look for** websites by people, or universities, who have **experience** in or **knowledge** of the topic you are **researching**. If you know who wrote the websites, try to find out more **about** their experience.

2-Think **about** has written the website, is it a company who may be trying to sell you something?

3-**Check** if the website is **up-to-date**. Is the information still **reliable** and **useful**? When was it **updated**?

4-Always **consult** more than one website. The **advantage** of looking at few different sites is that you can **check** the information and you may find **extra** facts.

5-What does the website **look like**? If it is **badly designed** and is full of grammar and **spelling** mistakes, then it is probably not very **reliable**.

6-Websites that have named their sources are usually more **reliable** and useful than sites that do not name their sources.

7-**Save** the URL (uniform resources locator) of any **useful** pages or images so you can **find** them easily.

Reading 2
Targeted advertising

Our computers and **smartphones** keep small **pieces** of information called **cookies**, which tell websites where we've been **online** and what we were **looking** at. Cookies are meant to **make** it easier for us to find things that **interest** us, but they also help **advertisers** to sell things to us. So, when we see an **advert** for something that seems to be **exactly** what we want, it is because **advertisers** know what we like. This kind of **advertising** is called **targeted advertising**.

Sometimes **advertisers** know where you like to go and when you like to do things, so they can **advertise to** you when you are **most interested**. For example, they advertise **places** to eat when you're **hungry**. They can also send **advertise** to your friends at the same time if they think you'll go together.

Sometimes it's easy to see that something is an **advert**, like those **large banner** adverts that always seem to appear on websites when you're trying to read. And there are **adverts** that seem to appear in the **strangest** places, like the small **sponsored** adverts that you find in **search** results.

Adverts **are supposed to be** honest, but we must be careful. When see an adverts online, think about why you might be seeing it and whether you can believe what it says.

Reading 3
Essay Dun

Download this **app** and you will never have to write an **essay** again! Just type in the title ,the question you need to answer ,and the word **limit** and the app will **consult** the **system** to **create** a **perfect essay**. It is 100% **reliable** and works every time.

Reading 4
Excuse-a-maker

This useful **app** has been **updated** to include 2000new **excuses** which can be adapted to any situation. Just **upload** a photo of yourself and say why you need the excuse

Exercises on Vocabulary

1)Choose the correct answer from a , b , c , or d :

1-You look very (smart – intelligent – fool – stupid) in that suit.

2- I admit it was not the --------------------- thing I have ever did.

a) smartest **b) intelligent** **c) smarter** **d) smart**

3- Scientists are doing -------------------- to reach an effective vaccine for Corona Virus

a) search **b) research** **c) experience** **d) seek**

4- The driver take another road to ---------------------- traffic jam on the main road.

a) intrude **b) void** **c) avoid** **d) vacuum**

5-detectives are now faced with the ---------------- of identifying the body .

a) tusk **b) task** **c) clerk** **d) deck**

6- the antonym of the word helpful is (**unhelpful – assist – assistant – cooperative**)

7- The company must reduce costs to compete ---------------------

a) effective **b) efficient** **c) effectively** **d) effectiveness**

8- a company is the (opposite – antonym - object – synonym) of a firm

9-My lack of practical -------------------- was a disadvantage . I should have been experienced
a) experiment **b) experience** **c) experienced** **d)exposition**
10-I ---------------------- a moment of panic as I boarded the plane .
a) experiment **b) experience** **c) experienced** **d)exposition**
11-My friend has a wide ----------------- of painting and music.
a) knowledge **b) ignorance** **c) negligence** **d)backward**
12-We are keeping ------------------- with the latest developments .
a) out of date **b) old-fashioned** **c) up-to date** **d) dated**
13-The main --------------- of the conversation was Ahmed's new job.
a) top **b) topic** **c) tour** **d) tone**
14-Keep the text short and on (**talk – subject – situation – topic)**
15- Businessmen are looking for someone who is ---------------- and hard-working.
a) reliable **b) unreliable** **c) comfortable** **d) liable**
16-My mobile software is out of date so I must -------------- it immediately .
a) date **b) upload** **c) update** **c) modern**
17-if your headache continues , you should ------------------- your doctor .
a) advise **b) consult** **c) reconcile** **c) conceal**
18-The word additional is the synonym of the word (**ex- infra – extra – mono**)
19- Growth has not been ----------------------across the country .
a) unicorn **b) union** **c) unit** **d) uniform**
20-Despite the ------------that she was wearing a seat belt, she was thrown sharply forward.
a) factual **b) real** **c) fact** **d) faction**
21- When i finish writing my notes , i will ---------------- them to the internet .
a) upload **b) download** **c) update** **d) upgrade**
22-I want my computer system more powerful and efficient so I will ------------------ it soon ,
a) upload **b) download** **c) out of date** **d) upgrade**
23- This man lies a lot . I can't depend on him as he is ------------------------
a) reliable **b) unreliable** **c) comfortable** **d) liable**
24- My grandson is fond of ------------------ a lot of games from the internet ,
a) uploading **b) downloading** **c) updating** **d) upgrading**
25-Although Egypt enjoys plenty of -------------------- , it isn't an advanced country .
a) resources **b) sauce** **c) resorts** **d) savings**
26-His public -------------- is very different from the real person .
a) image **b) picture** **c) portrait** **d) painting.**
27- Rescue planes are trying to ----------------- the missing sailors .
a) sink **b) drown** **c) locate** **d) duplicate**
28-Workmen arrived to take ---------------- the scaffolding سقالات
a) off **b) down** **c) in** **d) after**
29-A huge ----------------------- over the street said " welcome home "
a) motto **b) slogan** **c) symbol** **d) banner**
30- Live and let live ." That's my ------------------
a) motto **b) banner** **c) flag** **d) symbol "**
31-Unless he finds a ------------------ to pay for him, he will be forced to retire from athletics.
a) squad **b) system** **c) sponsor** **d) spanish**
32-The advertisements are intended to improve the company's -------------------
a) image **b) picture** **c) portrait** **d) painting**

33-When the ---------------- came on , I got up to put the kettle on.
a) actors b) actresses c) sponsors d) adverts
34- Set yourself ---------------- that you can reasonably hope to achieve .
a) targets b) referee c) corners d) offside
35- Social media sites usually ask for your year of birth when you ------------------------
a) register b) record c) score d) save
36- I haven't updated my online ----------------------- for ages .
a) face b) name c) profile d) file
37-In my opinion ,-------------- media websites have affected our life entirely .
a) sociable b) social c) society d) psychology
38- He is ----------------- to be on time for the conference .
a) seemed b) imposed c) supposed d) refused
39-Children's television programmes aimed at a ---------------- age group .
a) spicy b) specially c) sponsor d) specific
40-You have got a nice --------------- on your mobile . Can you download it for me?
a) app b) applicant c) apply d) ape
41- The government will do a new ---------------- to find out the number of the unemployed .
a) quiz b) survey c) questionnaire d) riddle
42-I don't grasp what you -------------- by saying these words.
a) tell b) inform c) mean d) warn
43- His ----------------- towards us was becoming more and more aggressive عدواني
a) behaviour b) behave c) profile d) picture
44- I want to update my Facebook (**friends – profile – painting - comments**)
45-I love the white colour .It is the ------------------- of purity .
a) banner b) image c) symbol d) slogan
46- I think the (**sense – sensible – sensitive – scary**) idea is to take a taxi home .
47- If you -------------------- to this page , you will become a follower.
a) subscribe b) take down c) view d) update
48- It is not------------- to include a lot of personal information on your profile on social media
a) bad b) not good c) sensible d) worse
49- Emojis are (**sites – symbols – mottoes – slogans**) which represent feelings.
50- Be careful when you ------------ a photo on the internet .
a) boost b) past c) post d) pass
51- Schools have a --------------- of rules which should be followed by students.
a) sat b) sit c) suit d) set
52- I pay a lot of money to have an --------------- to the internet.
a) access b) connection c) introduction d) contact
52-I will (**print – paint – said – told**) my notes by using a laser printer ,
53-The ------------------- works and writes for a newspaper or a magazine .
a) teacher b) doctor c) journalist d) scientist
54- My brother works for a company that also -------------------- reference books
a) punish b) publish c) spread d) push
55-The new technology has a great ------------------- on our life today .
a) influence b) affect c) effective d) efficient
56 – The word fake is the (**antonym – opposite – contrast –synonym**) counterfeit .
57- Mohammed Abd-alwahab was a great ------------------ He composesيلحن a lot of music .

a) writer b) musician c) journalist d) reporter
58- Can you (spend – draw – spread – publish) cheese on this loaf to make a sandwich.?
59- She is officially (recorded – scored – said – registered) as disabled .
60-The competition attracted over 500 contestants ------------------- 8 different countries.
a) presenting b) representing c) coming d) going
61-The report ------------------- the major problems facing society today .
a) highlights b) lights c) tells d) informs
62-Is there a (link – lake – fake – lane) between this murder and the robbery .
63- You have made a big mistake . You should ------------------ for everyone immediately .
a) excuse b) recognize c) apologise d) apology .
64- I have read the article quickly to get a (general – generally – genetic - genes) idea

Seem حكايه

-seem +adj يبدو +صفه

1-Mona seems(happy- happiness)
2-Ramy seems (sad-sadly)

-seem to be +adj \ pp يبدو انه

1-He seems to be (anger-angry)
2-The door seems to be (broke-broken)

لا تنسى اننا لا نستخدم الفعل **Seem** في الازمنه المستمره

1-He (seems – is seeming) to be angry now.
2-Today, the weather (seems-is seeming) to be nice.

It seems \ seemed that +جمله
It seems \ seemed like +جمله
It seems \ seemed as if +جمله
It seems \ seemed as though+جمله
يبدو انه كما لو كان

1- -It seems as (by -if) he needs money.
2- -Yesterday she (was seeming -seemed) like he wanted to commit suicide.
3- -It seems (like -as) they are going out.
4- -It seems (whether- that) he will win.
5- -It seems (as-by) though they are playing a lot.

لاحظ في التركيبه السابقه يمكن وضع To+s

-It seems to me that I'll answer well.

Seem to +inf اثبات
Don't \ doesn't seem to +inf
Seem \ seems \ seemed not +inf

-He seems to study more.

-He doesn't seem to study more.
-He seems not to study more.

لاحظ ضيغه الاستمرار

(اثبات) **Seem to be +v - ing**
(نفي) **Doesn't \ don't \ didn't seem to be +v - ing**

-She seems to be watching someone.
-He doesn't seem to be waiting someone.

الصيغه التامه

Seem to have +p.p

يبدو وكأنه فعل

-He seems to have made the plan

لا تنسي هذه الصيغه

-there seems \ seemed to be+ اسم

-there seems (to be- be) some difficulty in the exam.
-there seemed (to be- as if) no answer for my questions.

يفضل مع الاشياء غير الحقيقيه تستخدم

Seem +adj
Seem to be +الصفه وليس

-He seems (to be older- older) than his father.
-He seems (to be-..............)younger than his son.

ملحوظه خفيفه للطلبه الظريفه
مع الحقائق يمكن استخدام

Seem (to be) + صفه
Appear (to be) +صفه

بينما الاراء التي لا تعبر عن حقيقه تستخدم

Seem +الصفه

-He seems (appears) to be polite.
-He seems taller than he is in this suit.

Mean ايه حكايه

Mean

يرمز الي \ يشير الي \ يدل علي \ يعني \ يقصد

- -His angry looks means a lot to me.
- -The word (not clean) means dirty.
- -Her wearing black clothes means she is sad.
- -when I hit you I mean that I want you study hard.

What do you mean? ماذا تقصد (تشعر بالغضب)

Mean + v-ing يستلزم – يتطلب – يؤدي الي

- -Losing money means searching for a job.

- -Wasting time means failing in the end.

Mean (that) + جمله

- -I mean that you are brave.
- I didn't mean you must

Mean to +inf ينوي -يخطط

- -He didn't mean to kill her but it happened by mistake. (instead to)
- -Do you mean to finish the project tomorrow. (plan)

ركز في التعبيرات الاتيه:

- Life means nothing to me. غير مهمه
- -My daughter means the world to me. هام جدا
- -I have never meant him any harm. لم اشعران اسبب ضرر له

Be supposed to +inf = be meant to +inf

-You are supposed to get up at 7 o'clock.
-You are meant to get up at 7 o'clock.

Choose the correct answer

.1-It ………………… that children do the same with messaging
a. seems **b. supposed** **c. meant** **d. pretending**
.2-I should have set the alarm clock as I was ………. to meet my friend this morning.
a. seemed **b. meant** **c. suppose** **d. pretending**
3-Cookies are ……………to make it easier for us to find things that interest us .
a. seems **b. supposed** **c. meaning** **d. meant**
.4- I can't see this photo clearly. What is it ----------------- .
a) meaning to be **b) seemed to be** **c) supposed to** **d) meant to be**
5-My brother was ……….. to help me yesterday, but he was too busy chatting online .
a. mean **b. supposed** **c. suppose** **d. seemed**
.6-You shouldn't have entered that room as you were not ……………….. to be there .
a. seems **b. supposed** **c. meant** **d. suppose**
7- I was ………………….. to see my friend Nour yesterday .but I didn't have time .
a. supposed **b. seems** **c. meaning** **d. pretending**
.8-the weather …………………. to be hot tomorrow .
a. seems **b. supposed** **c. meaning** **d. meant**
.9-I am …………………… to take part in a poetry competition
a. seems **b. supposed** **c. meaning** **d. pretending**
.10-Nabil is ………………… to cook dinner
a. seems **b.mean** **c. supposed** **d. pretend**
.11-I seem …………. the first student to arrive at school today .
a. to be **b. being** **c. been** **d. have been**
.12-It …………………… to snow last week .
a. supposed **b. meant** **c. didn't suppose** **d. wasn't supposed**
.13-Maya meant …………….. you .
a. calling **b. to call** **c. call** **d. calls**

.14-Amr seems ………………. a good day .

a. has **b. have** **c. had** **d. to be having**

.15-The train ……………. to leave at 9 o'clock .

a. meant **b. is meant** **c. means** **d. has meant**

16-My teacher …………….. be happy with my work .

a. meant **b. supposed** **c. seemed to** **d. meant to**

.17-Maher ………………. be a lot happier in his new school .

a. seemed to **b. supposed** **c. meant** **d. seems**

18-I really want to read this because it is ………….. to be the most exciting book . .

a. seems **b. supposed** **c. meaning** **d. pretending**

Suppose ايه حكايه

1-Suppose = assume \ presume =believe = guess = expect

ويأتي بعدها جمله كامله

-I suppose (that) he will answer the test easily.

-I suppose she can do it.

قد تأتي في نهايه الجمله بهذا الشكل.

2- I suppose (so)

-Mona is an honest girl, I suppose.

3- Suppose + مفعول to +inf

-I suppose the train to arrive at 7 p.m

-I suppose her to come soon.

ركز اننا نستخدم ضمير مفعول

Mini test

1-He is better than his brother, I suppose. The verb suppose can be replaced by….

a-assume **b-guess** **c- a&b**

2-She …………her teacher to advise her.

a-supposes **b-suppose** **c-suppose** **d-a&c**

3-I suppose…………..to help us.

a-they **b-them** **c- a&b**

4-I suppose…………will help us.

a-they **b-them** **c- a&b**

am, is, are supposed to +inf

من المفترض ان وهذه الصيغه تستخدم لـ

Obligation الالزام **arrangements** الترتيب
Common belief اعتقاد عام **purpose \ intention** الغرض \ النيه

1-This school is supposed to be the best one "common belief"

اقصد ان هذه المدرسه كل الناس تعرف ان افضل مدرسه.

2-You are supposed to look after this patient, doctor Samy (**obligation**)
3-The mobile is supposed to be used for making and receiving calls. (**purpose**)
4-I'm supposed to get up tomorrow (**arrangements**).
5-You are supposed to study hard.(**advice**)

صيغه الماضي

Was\ were supposed to + inf

كان من المفترض ان

-He was supposed to arrive home early.

كان من المفترض ان يصل الي البيت مبكرا
اي انه لم يصل الي البيت مبكرا.

You were supposed to help your brother.

اي انه لم يساعد والده

Mini test

1-He is supposed….me from school.
a-take **b-to take** **c-taking**
2-he was………………to leave yesterday.
a-suppose **b-supposing** **c-supposed**
3-You are supposed to arrive at work on time. This is …..
a-purpose **b-obligation** **c-intention**
4-He was supposed to finish the project last week, it means he ……………it
a-finished **b-didn't finish** **c-may finish**
5-He wasn't supposed to insult his father, it means he…………his father.
a-should insult **b-shouldn't insult** **c-shouldn't have insulted**
6-You are…………to go there soon.
a-suppose **b-supposing** **c-supposed**
7-One of the team……………to attend the programme.
a-suppose **b-is supposed** **c-are supposed**

passive لا تنسي صيغه الـ
Am \ is \ are \ was \ were supposed to be + p.p

-A ticket is supposed to (**book**- booked) now.
-A break is supposed……………..after hard work.
a-to take **b-to be taken** c-to be taking

تذكر الصيغه الاتيه لتدل على الاستمرار

Am\ is \ are\ was \were supposed to be +ing

-He is supposed to be studying now.

من المفترض انه يكون بيذاكر الان

-they are supposed to be coming from school now.

انه من المفترض انهم قادمين من المدرسه الان

1-All the team is supposed …………ready for the match.

a-be b-to be c-being

2-Both Alaa and Asmaa………….supposed to come to our party yesterday.

a-am b-are c-were

3-he has worked hard and he is supposed……………a rest now.

a-be taken b-take c-to be taking

4-Our luggage………..supposed to arrive now.

a-is b-are c-has

لا تنسي الصيغه القادمه

Was \ were supposed to have + p.p

Was\ were supposed to have been +p.p

عندما نتحدث عن شئ كان مفترض اتمامه في الماضي

-Samy (is- was) supposed to have done the homework.

-When the husband got home, his wife…………..supposed to be preparing lunch.

a-is b-was c-has been

ملاحظات ظريفه للطلبه اللطيفه

يمكن استخدام

Suppose (that) supposing (that) + ماضي بسيط

لتحل محل If 2

-Suppose that you were tired, what would you do.

-Supposing he came late, would you meet him?

1-Supposing …………..you last the match, how would you behave.

a-that b-no word c-a&b

الحال

Supposed ☞ supposedly

من المفترض وتأتي في بدايه او نهايه الجمله

Supposedly, he is the best student.

Exercise on Grammar

1-Choose the correct answer:

1-You……….to check the car engine.

(meant – are meant – meaning – will mean)

2-This play seems……….boring.

(to be – being – been – has been)

3-That wasn't ……………to happen.
(seemed – seem – suppose – supposed)
4-I'm sorry I didn't………..to anger you.
(mean – suppose – seem – wants)
5-How…..supposed to know you were waiting for me?
(had I – I had – was I – I was)
6-What does this word……….? – Delicious.
(seem – suppose – mean – be meant)
7-I haven't seen it myself, but it's supposed…………a great film.
(being – been – to be – have been)
8-This combination of qualities………generally supposed to be extremely rare.
(has – is – were – have)
9-You're not……….to walk on the grass.
(seem – mean – supposed – accused)
10-Noha didn't…….very pleased when I met her.
(mean – seem – suppose – want)
11-Everyone seemed……….ready, so we set off.
(to be – be – to being – being)
12-I was………to arrive at 8:00, but I arrived later.
(seemed – meant – suppose – supposing)
13-My brother seems……….yesterday's meeting.
(attend – to attend – to be attending – to have attended)
14-The meeting…….take place on Wednesday, but we've had to postpone it.
(is supposed to – is supposing to – are seemed to – meant to)
15-You………supposed to be here. Go to your office now.
(don't – aren't – wasn't – didn't)
16-Ramy is supposed………..dinner.
(to cook – cook – to be cooked – to cooking)
17-It………to snow last week.
(didn't suppose – wasn't supposed – isn't meant – wasn't seemed)
18-Karim………a good day.
(seems to have – seems be having – seem to have – seems to be)
19-The train meant……….at 10 o'clock.
(leave – to leave – to leaving – have left)
20-The teacher………to be happy with my work.
(meant – supposed – seemed – was seeming)
21-What……….to do this week?
(you are meant – are you supposed – are you seemed – did you suppose)
22-What is the weather……….like tomorrow?
(meant to be – meant to – seem to be – supposed to be)
23-Adverts are………honest, but we must be careful.
(meant to be – meant to – seem to be – supposed be)
24-Hoda………upset today. I don't know why.

(seems – seemed – is seeming – is seemed)
25-He seems……….after losing his mobile.
(anger – angrily – angry – angers)
26-She seems…………
(friend – friends – friendly – friendship)
27-It seems……..the shop will have to close down. They can't find a buyer for it.
(that – if – though – no word)
28-It seemed as…….time was standing still. I wanted that moment to last forever.
(through – though – like – that)
29-It seemed……….she didn't like the food.
(like – as – to – if)
30-It seemed ……….everyone that the police were ready to secure the event.
(like – to – as if – as though)
31-It seems to……….as though she needs help.
(I – my – me – myself)
32-Ramy seems………busy.
(being – to being – be – to be)
33-I don't like that man. He……….friendly at all.
(seems – doesn't seem – never seem – seem not)
34-There seemed…no reason why she shouldn't come with us, so we all travelled together.
(that – to be – as if – as though)
35-Don't talk loudly. The baby seems……….in the next room.
(sleeping – to asleep – to be sleep – to be sleeping)
36-"That rising sun meant that the weather would be warm." In this sentence the verb "meant" can be replace by…………
(planned – indicated – supposed – had to)
37-The verb "to suppose"……… "to assume".
(means – is meaning – was meaning – is meant)
38-"For most people, Paris means fashion and beauty." In this sentence, the verb "means" can be replaced by……….
(plans – presents – summarizes – symbolizes)
39-He meant……Samy to be in charge.
(by – to – with – for)
40-I meant Mona…….the job. I really recommend her.
(take – to take – taking – to taking)
41-There seemed……..little difference between the two alternatives.
(no word – to be – as tough – as if)

Unit 6 learning from your mistakes

fog	ضباب	dream	حلم
foggy	كثير الضباب	care about	يهتم بـ
mean	بخيل - يعني	mistakes	أخطاء
fire	نار - يفصل	treat	يتعامل
beg	يتوسل	shout out	يصيح
pile	ركام	businessman	رجل أعمال
sigh	يتنهد	business	عمل
nephew	ابن اخ	philosopher	فيلسوف
smile	يبتسم - ابتسامة	Hard hearted	قاسي
tone	نغمة	gift	هبة
boss	رئيس	pay	يدفع - راتب
Christmas	عيد الميلاد	mind	عقل- يمانع
carol	ترنيمة	Bring back	يذكر
character	شخصية	assistant	مساعد
friendship	صداقة	ignore	يتجاهل
massive	ضخم	butcher	جزار
enormous	ضخم	waste	يضيع
poverty	الفقر	invite	يدعو
sun cream	كريم شمس	logical	منطقي
reply	يرد	plenty of	كثيرا من
chat	يتسامر	lightning	البرق
prompt	عاجل	forgive	يسامح
surprised	مندهش	hut	كوخ
narrative	سرد قصصي	caption	تعليق
pool	حمام	straw	قش
disappointed	محبط	rise	ينهض
interested in	مهتم بـ	torch	شعلة
regret	يندم	mice	فئران
generous	كريم	a fool	أحمق
pick up	يلتقط	polite	مؤدب

Definitions

sigh	ينهد	A deep breath out that shows you are tired, sad or disappointed
mean	بخيل	Not happy to spend money or give anything
pile	كومه / ركام	A group of things put on top of each other.

beg	يتوسل / يشحت	To ask for something in a way that shows you need it very much.
bring back	يستعيد / يذكر	Make you remember
fall out	ينهي صداقته ب	Stop being friendly
get into	يبدا الاستمتاع / الاهتمام ب	Start enjoying
get on with	يصادق شخص	Be friendly with
hang out with	يقضي وقت مع	Spend time with
keep in touch with	يبقي علي اتصال مع	Continue to communicate with
lose touch with	يفقد الاتصال مع	Stop communicating with

Synonyms

a bit	قليلا	a little/slightly
abridged	مختصر	summarized
beg	طلب /سال	ask/inquire/request
cold	بارد	chilly/freezing/snowy
enormous	ضخم	huge/massive
far away	بعيد	remote
foggy	ضبابي	hazy/misty
friendly	ودود	lovely
mean	بخيل	stingy
pile	كومه	bunch/mass/collection
sigh	يتنهد	sob/moan
suddenly	فجاه	unexpectedly/out of the blue
wishes	امنيات	hopes
lonely- isolated/ unwanted	وحيد	alone
seemingly	من الواضح	apparently
frustrated	محبط	disappeared
reasoned	منطقي	logical
pay no attention to	يتجاهل	ignore

Antonyms

alone	وحيد	loved	محبوب
disappointed	محبط	pleased – satisfied	سعيد
foggy	ضباب	clear	واضح
friendly	ودود	unfriendly	غير ودود
honest	امين	dishonest	غير امين
ignore	يتجاهل	pay attention to	ينتبه ل
mean	بخيل	generous	كريم
mean	قاسي	kind	طيب – عطوف
a bit	قليلا	much	كثيرا

abridged	مختصر	detailed	مفصل
beg	طلب/ سال	give/donate	اعطي/ تبرع
cold	بارد	hot/warm	حار / دافي
enormous	ضخم	tiny	ضئيل
far away	بعيد	near/close	قريب
pile	كومه	few/little	قليل
suddenly	فجاه	expectedly	متوقع
wishes	امنيات	regrets	ندم / اسف

Prepositions

get on with	يصادق	fall out with	ينهي صداقته ب
hang out with	يقضي وقت مع	spend no time with	لا يقضي وقت مع
keep in touch with	يبقي علي اتصال	lose touch with	يفقد الاتصال ب
stop being interested in	يفقد الاهتمام ب	get into	يهتم ب
upload	يرفع ملفات علي الانترنت	download	يحمل الملفات من الانترنت
argue with	يتجادل مع	run off	ينطلق
argue against	يهاجم	according to	وفقا ل
work for	يعمل لحساب	work against	يعمل ضد
pick up	يتناول - يلتقط	care about	يهتم ب

Expressions

A deep breath out	نفس عميق	international friend	اصدقاء من مختلف الدول
Bah	اسلوب للاعتراض	invite someone to	يدعو شخصا ل
Be happy about	سعيد ب	learn from	يتعلم من
See mistakes	يري الاخطاء	let someone go home	يترك شخصا يعود لبيته
Care so much about	يولي اهتمام كبير	make friends	يكون صداقات
Change his mind	يغير رايه	mean a lot to	تعني الكثير ل
Come into	دخل / جاء	pay/ keep attention	يلفت- يجذب الانتباه
Compare with	يقارن ب	pay for	يدفع الثمن
Feel alone	يشعر بالوحده	pick up	يلتقط
Feel ignored	يشعر بالتجاهل	shout out of	ينادي من خارج
Feel sorry about	يشعر بالاسف تجاه	spend money on	ينفق مالا علي
Fire (someone)	يطرد شخص من العمل	the end of	نهايه
Fire the gun at	يطلق النار علي	treat people badly	يعامل الناس بشكل سيء
Get lost	يتوهه	very far away	بعيدا جدا
Get worse	يشعر بالسوء	wake up in bed	يستيقظ من فراشه
Give feedback	يعطي تغذيه راجعه/ رد فعل	waste his time	يهدر وقته
In an unfriendly tone	بنبرة صوت غير ودوده	go on a picnic	يذهب في نزهه
In contact with	علي اتصال ب	work in an office	يعمل في مكتب
In the middle of	في منتصف	work with	يعمل مع شخص
Have a dream	يحلم	change his mind	يغير رأيه
Have a relationship	يكون علي علاقه مع	make friends	يصادق
Have a cold	يعاني من برد	fire a gun at	يصوب نحو

Have a conservation يتحاول	take an interest in يهتم ب

Language notes

Get

Get on with ينسجم مع يكون علي علاقه جيده ب
Get on with يستمر في القيام ب
Get on (with) يتأقلم مع
-You must get (**on**- off) with your colleagues at school.
-you shouldn't despair, you should get (off- **on**) with your new project.
-After two weeks in the factory, he could get (off- **on**) at work.

Fall

Fall out with يتشاجر مع شخص
Fall out يسقط
Fall off يسقط من علي شئ ليس منه
Fall from يسقط من علي شئ منه
-you should fall (from- **out**) with people.
-The apple fell (out- **from**) the tree.
-The boy fell (out-**off**) the bike.
- I fear that all my hair falls (off – **out**)

Hang

Hang, hanged, hanged يشنق
Hang, hung, hug يعلق
Hang out with يقضي وقت طويل معb
-He will hang out (by- **with**) his wife far from his children.
-I will (**hang**- bang) my clothes on the trail.
-they (hung- hang- **hanged**) him yesterday as he was guilty of murder.

Spend no time with لا يقضي وقت مع
-He is busy, he spends no time (by- **with**) us.

Get

Get into \ in + مكان يدخل مكان
Get in يدخل
Get into يألف- يبدأ الاستمتاع ب
Stop being interested in
-It's difficult get (at- into) these friends, they have different tendency.

Bring

Bring…..back يذطر – يعيد ذكري – يستعيد
-I want to being back my old car seeing one of my old friends bring back a lot of memories.

Fire

Fire مدفأة **Fire** نار حريق **be on fire** يحترق
The fire breaks out تشعل النار **The fire goes out** تنطفئ النار
Start a fire يبدأ حريق **Make a fire** يشعل النار
Set fire to يشعل النار في = set ……on fire
Fire يطرد من العمل

All of us sat by (fear- **fire**)
The office was (in – **on**) fire but we could control it.
You must keep to rules or I'll (fear – **fire**) you.
-He decided to (**set**- make) fire to the house.
-The fire broke (into- **out**) suddenly.
-The fire went (off- **out**) quickly.

Reading &listening
A Christmas Carol

It was the end of December, it was dark outside and the streets were **foggy**. Scrooge was a very rich businessman, but he was **mean** and people didn't like him. Scrooge was working in his office with his **assistant** ,Bob Cratchit . He was very cold because Scrooge wouldn't **pay for** a big fire to keep them warm.
There was only a small fire and it was very **far away**. It's late. Can I go home, Mr Scrooge? Bob **begged**. Have you finished your work? Asked Scrooge.
Bob looked at the enormous pile of work left to do and **sighed**.
"You can't go home if you don't finish your work, continued Scrooge.
If I finish all this work tonight, will you let me come to work a bit later tomorrow morning? asked Bob. No, said Scrooge. Suddenly the door opened and Scrooge's nephew, Fred, **came into** the office. He gave his uncle a **friendly** smile.
Bah! Said Scrooge, why are you here? And why are you so happy? You're poor. What have you got to be **happy about**? If you are so rich, why are you so sad? Replied Fred. Perhaps if you were poor like me, **you'd** be happy like me, too.Have you come to ask me for money? Asked Scrooge in an **unfriendly** tone. No, replied his nephew. I've come to invite you to dinner. Bah! Said his uncle.

A Christmas Carol: After a dream

The next morning, Scrooge woke up in his bed. He'd had **a terrible dream**, but now he could **see his mistakes**. If he hadn't felt so **alone**. He wouldn't have **cared** only **about** money. And if he hadn't cared about money so much, he would have treated other people better. Then he would have had more friends, and he wouldn't **have felt** so alone. But now he would change. He ran to his window and saw a boy in the street. You! Boy! He

shouted out of the window. Do you know the butcher's shop? Yes, Mr Scrooge, shouted the boy. He was surprised to see Mr Scrooge smile.
I want you to buy the best food and take it to Bob Cratchit's house as a **gift** from me to his family. Will you do this for me if I pay you? "Of course". Said the boy and then he **ran off** before Mr Scrooge **changed his mind.** Scrooge went out in the street and said. "Good morning", to all the people he met and he **smiled at** them. Everyone was surprised to **see** Mr. Scrooge **smiling**, but they replied, "Good morning. Mr Scrooge. And that made Scrooge very happy. Then he went to his nephew's house and asked if he could have dinner with him. Of course, his nephew smiled and invited him to come inside.

How are your friendships?

Have you ever met a friend to spend time with them and, in the middle of a conversation . When you're talking , they start looking at their phone? When that happens, many people feel **ignored** and **upset** and the problem may be **getting worse** because over 81% of Egyptian **teenagers** between the ages of 15 and 17 now **own** a phone. **Studies** have shown that just having a mobile phone out while having a conversation makes friends **feel uncomfortable** with each other. And many people think that when someone is using their phone, they are not being **polite** and not **really** listening. So, using a **phone** like this can damage even good friendship. However, there are ways to have a phone without **losing** your friends. **Understanding** the problem is important. So, the next time you are going to **pick up** your phone while talking to a friend, **think about** what you are doing and stop. Is your phone really more **important** than your friend? Perhaps you should **keep** your **attention on** the person you are talking to. And if a friend ignores you, tell them about it because they may not understand how it **makes** you **feel**.

Listening

Presenter:

In today's show, we're going back in time and looking at some of our **regrets**. Now I've got a message from Tarek. And Tarek has a story that , I think, will **bring back memories** for many of us. This is what he says…. I **used to talk** to my family and play with my brothers after school. I also **used to** phone my grandparents and my cousins. But then I **got into using** social media more. I started **using** social media to talk to my friends after school **too**, we all liked the same things. It was fun and we all **got on with each other**. Something **I'd hang** out with them online for hours **chatting**. I **guess** I lost **touch with** my cousins and my **grandparents** a bit. I still saw them sometimes, of course, but I **didn't** call them. I didn't tell my grandparents **about** my day at school. But when my friends **started falling out with** each other online, I stopped chatting with them, too. Now, I'm sorry. I **shouldn't have ignored** my family. **I wish I'd kept in touch with my cousins** more. **I should have called my grandparents**, and I wish I **could change** what happened. Sadly, this kind of thing seems to happen so often these days. I guess, when we're **getting into** something new, we can forget to take an interest in the people who really care us. Thank you for sharing your story with us, Tarek.

Prep school memories

Hoda: Hey Lamia! Have you seen this from Ola? She's posted some old photos when we were in prep school.
Lamia: Really? Let's see. But, I don't remember an Ola in our class.
Hoda: Yes, you do. She used to sit opposite you in class and you would always fall out when we played any game together because you both wanted to be the leaders.
Lamia: Ahhh, yes I remember now. I shouldn't have argued with her so much because she was a kind person really.
Hoda: Look. Here she is in the photo.
Lamia: Ahh, wow!
Hoda: ….and look at us! Oh no way! Just look at your hair!
Lamia: Oh, that's terrible! And what about your dress!
Hoda: Oh! No! Not that dress! It brings back so many bad memories. That was the dress i was wearing when I lost my favourite necklace. I wish I hadn't taken it to school that day.
Lamia: But the necklace was very pretty and if you hadn't take it to school, Smaira wouldn't have spoken to you about it and you two wouldn't have got on so well!
Hoda: That's true I guess, and we are still very good friends now.
Lamia: And look! There's the old group of friends we used to hang out with. I was sad when they moved away to go to high school and really wish we hadn't lost touch with them.
Hoda: Yes, we had some great times together and if we had stayed in touch, we would have been able to organize a school reunion. I wish we hadn't left prep school! We had a lot less homework!
Lamia: That's true! Perhaps we can keep in touch with them on social media.
Hoda: Good idea! Let's post a message asking if anyone knows anything about them.

Judy

Judy: Huda was my best friend. We'd always hang out together at school. We made each other laugh a lot and we were very close. Sometimes, we'd hang out together after school as well. We'd listen to music, look at magazines and chat for hours. One weekend, we went shopping at the mall. We had a great time as usual, but that was when she showed me her new smartphone. Apparently, it was a really good phone and Huda couldn't stop using it all the time. She got really into social media and made lots of new friends online.

Video script:

Charles Dickens was born in England in 1812. He wrote fifteen novels including Great Expectation, Oliver Twist, David Copperfield, and Hard Times. His most popular novel is probably A Christmas Carol, which was published in 1843.

In A Christmas Carol, Dickens wrote about some of the problems in Britain at that time . Many people were very poor and Dickens thought that the rich people should be kinder and help the poor people who worked for them.
The main character is Ebenezer scrooge. At the beginning of the story, he is mean and he won't help anyone, including his employee , Bob cratchit, who is very poor with a large family and a sick child.
However , by the end of the story scrooge has changed and he sees life in a completely different way . we are told that scrooge: Became as a good a friend , as good an employer and as good a man as the good as the good old city of London had ever seen.

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer:

1-The children………their father to take them to the cinema, but he said no.
(ordered – begged – attacked – let)

2-The police………two shots at the criminals before they were arrested.
(breathed – designed – warmed – fired)

3-The employee was busy behind a……of paper on his desk.
(file – Nile – pile – mile)

4-The businessman………deeply at the thought of losing his money.
(cheered – sighed – laughed – yelled)

5-The old factory owner has always been….with money, so his employees don't like him.
(cheerful – generous – careless – mean)

6-I spent two years working……a book about children.
(with – on – for – as)

7-Some teachers let students………a quiz before starting the lesson.
(do – to do – does – doing)

8-My elder brother works………an engineer in a famous factory.
(with – on – as – at)

9-The young man doesn't know what he really wants in……..
(life – a life – the life – lives)

10-It can take about one month for a broken arm to……..
(heal – treat – cure – spread)

11-I felt……when my team lost the final match.
(disappointed – appointed – pleased – acquainted)

12-The relationship between workers and……should be good in order to achieve profits.
(customers – buyers – employers – clients)

13-Why are you being so……..to me? I hope you treat me better.

(meaning – main – mean – means)

14-I found the letter in a………of documents on his desk.

(peel – pile – bill – pull)

15-What do you…………by saying we are disturbing you?

(main – mean – mail – mill)

16-They both threatened to………all the careless workers.

(reward – fire – award – relieve)

17-We are looking for people who would be willing to……in the group's work.

(asset – assist – assume – desert)

18-Come here. ………me check your pulse.

(Force – Cause – Allow – Let)

19-Can I come to work……later tomorrow morning?

(a bit – more – pity – bitter)

20-Our boss usually treats us……………

(friendly – friendliness – friendlier – in a friendly way)

21-I…………a bad dream last night.

(had –went – gave – paid)

22-The so many friends you have…….prove that you are sociable.

(needed – paid – made – fired)

23-You need to………enough attention to your education.

(pay – miss – fail – had)

24-The donations………will be spent on the poor children.

(needed – missed – done – fired)

25-He usually………his mistakes when he calms down.

(makes – goes – sees – gets)

26-I got up late, so I ……..the school bus.

(paid – missed – felt – had)

27-He is………with his money. The poor like him very much.

(generous – sick – warm – unfriendly)

28-When mum didn't find out that I had broken the vase, I ….in relief.

(sighed – meant – fired – piled)

29-He doesn't have any friends here. That's why he feels so……

(apparently – alone – sadly – completely)

30-His……as a teacher makes him very successful. He has a natural ability to teach children easily.

(reunion – tone – gift – regret)

31-It is………that a child makes mistakes.

(main – logical – disappointed – foggy)

32-Charities depend mainly on………..from people.

(attacks – memories – relationship – donations)

33-It is very dangerous to drive fast on a ………road.

(main – logical – disappointed – foggy)

34-Your……..is no use. Forget about your past failure and get ready for a new start.

(reunion – tone – gift – regret)

35-My father took us all to the park, ……..my baby sister.

(including – inviting – firing – extracting)

36-…….., she refused our help. We knew she needed it badly.

(Luckily – Alone – Sadly – Completely)

37-The housing problem is the………interest of the government this year.

(main – lonely – disappointed – foggy)

38-We…….to tell you that you haven't been selected for the position.

(regret – sorry – upset – remind)

39-The young man whom I employed as my…….works very hard.

(king – editor – assistant – patron)

40-My sister's son is my………and I am his uncle.

(cousin – niece – nephew – brother)

41-Employers have an obligation to…….all the employees equally.

(cure – beat – treat – operate)

42-People are advised not to give money to……because most of them are taking it as a profession instead of looking for a job.

(burglars – beggars – nephews - tones)

43-We should teach our children to learn from their………

(rights – corrections – mistakes – behaviours)

44-There is a running………taking place these days. Are you in?

(match – path – race – passage)

45-My father asked me not to………my money on that unhealthy food.

(benefit – waste – keep – save)

46-Teachers have been using visual aids such as…….and pictures in the classroom for a long time.

(screens – chalks – maps – laps)

47-In squash, you have to beat the player you are playing……..

(lonely – private – alone – particular)

48-The church choir is rehearsing some………to be sung at Christmas Eve.

(films – games – stations – carols)

لـ................................ If ....و

If

If = in case = provided = provided that , فى حالة، بشرط

If you are careful , I will give you my car (in case)

In case you are careful , I will give you my car

If = With , by , in case of + v – ing

- (In case – **In case of**) playing well, we will win.
- (In – **In case of**) the rain, we won't go out.
- If we study hard, we will succeed. (**By**)
- **By studying hard, we will succeed.**

If + not = unless = except if إذا لم

- (Unless – **If**) he doesn't get up early , he will miss the bus .

ركز : Unless لابد أن تأتى بعدها إثبات أى إذا وجدنا نفى نختار If وإذا وجدنا اثبات فإن المعنى هو الفارق مثل :

- (If – **Unless**) he is careful , he will make a mistake .
- (**If** – Unless) he is careful , he won't make a mistake .

Unless = without /bufor + v ----ing / n

- (**without** – unless) planning well , the country will not make progress .
- (Without – **In case of**) studying well , you will pass the exam .

If it weren't for/without + v ----ing / n → would + inf.

If it hadn't been for/without + v ---ing / n → would have + p.p.

- If it hadn't been for Ali , we wouldn't (solve / **have solved**) the problem .

If it (hadn't been – **weren't**) for Mona , we would stay at home

- **If + جملة = with – by – in case of + v – ing / n فى حالة**
- **Unless + جملة = without , But for + v-ing / n بدون / لولا**

- (***If*** – Unless) he is intelligent , he will solve the problem .
- (If – ***In case of***) coming early , I'll let him in .
- (In case of – ***without***) blood banks , a lot of people would die .

If zero مضارع بسيط ⟶ مضارع بسيط

- عندما نتحدث عن حقائق علمية خاصة بالطبيعة أو حقائق ثابتة " عادات "
- If we (***heat*** – heated) iron , it expands .

If water (heats – ***is heated***) , it turns into vapour . يمكن أن يكون مبنى للمجهول

- If the tree (***is*** – was) deciduous , it loses its leaves .
- If the bark of the tree is destroyed , the tree (***dies*** – would die)
- If there is not much rain in a year, the rings in a tree were close together . (**are**)
- If you'll mix red and white , you get pink . (**mix**)

Water evaporates if (**heated** – is heated)

الحـــــالة  الأولــــــــــى

If مضارع بسيط ⟶ will , can , may/must ,have to ,has to +inf
If مضارع بسيط ⟶ should /might -would rather 'd better+ inf .
If مضارع بسيط ⟶ اقتراح – أمر It's + adj.

- وتعبر الحالة الأولى لـ If عن احتمال / تنبؤ أو توقع مستقبلى .

- If you study hard , you (***will*** – would) pass the exam .
- If he (***plays*** – played) well , he will win .
- If he comes early tomorrow , I (would – ***will***) receive him .
- If he invites you , (***will you*** – you will) go ?
- What (***will you*** – you will) do if he comes now ?
- If she (***comes*** – came) , please , go out .
- If you pick those apples now , they (don't – ***won't***) taste very sweet .
- If this tree has deep roots , it (doesn't – ***won't***) fall over in strong winds .
- If you (looked – ***look***) at the sun , you will damage your sight .
- If there were clouds in the sky tonight, you will not be able to see the moon.(**are**)
- If you watched the sky on a clear night , you can see stars and planets.(**watch**)
- If it's warm and sunny tomorrow , I (***will*** – would) go swimming .

If1 مضارع بسيط / أى مضارع will + inf

- If you (**are** – were) wearing glasses, you will protect your eyes.

و تدل الحالة الأولى على التنبؤ – الوعد – التهديد – النصح – الأمر – الأذن

- If you are ill, you (can – **should**) see a doctor .
- If you feel tired, you (**can** – may – must – will) go home .

ملاحظات

1- يمكن أن نستخدم (When) بدلا من (If) فى الحالـــة الصفريـــة.

- If / When I feel tired, I go to bed early.
- When it is warm, I go for a walk every day.
- Where do you go if / when you are on holiday?

2- الروابط الآتيـــة تستخدم بدلا من (If) في الحالة الأولي. و يجوز الحالات الاخرى

Provided that / On condition that / Providing / As long as / So long as

- You can borrow my pen **if / provided that / on condition that / as long as** you give it back.
- Provided that If you send your order by fax, we will deliver the goods immediately.
- As long as you invite me for lunch, I will help you with your homework.

3- تُحذف (If) في الحالة الأولي و نبدأ بالفعل (Should).

- **If** he **has** enough time, he will watch the football match.
- **Should** he **have** enough time, he will watch the football match.

4- يمكن أن نستخدم (و إلا and / or / or else / otherwise) بدلا من (If) فى الحالـــة الأولي.

- You've got to start studying, **or else** you'll fail all those exams.
- We'd better send it by express mail**, otherwise** it'll take days.

5- يمكن أن نستخدم (تحسبا لـــ in case) بدلا من (If) فى الحالـــة الأولي لتعبر عما ينبغي أن نفعله لنستعد لموقف محتمل في المستقبل.

- I'll draw a map for you **in case** you can't find our house.
- I don't want to go out tonight **in case** my friend phones.
- Shall I keep some chicken salad for your brother **in case** he's hungry when he gets here?
- In case I forget later, here are the keys to the garage.

- لاحظ الفارق فى المعنى بين (تحسبا لـــ **in case**) و **(If)** فى الأمثلة التالية.

- Let's take our swimsuits **in case** there's a pool at the hotel.
(We don't know if there is a pool there.)
- Let's take our swimsuits **if** there's a pool in the hotel.
(We will wait until we know about the pool before we decide.)

جمل محلولة للمتفوقين غسلة خالص

1- if you drive dangerously fast , you ………..an accident
a- can have *b-have* *c)have had* *d)are having*
2- it is fact that one ………….if one has nothing to do
a)bores *b)will bore* *c)is bored* *d)would bore*
3- If you have a credit card , you …………..things online
a)are buying *b)buy* *c)can buy* *d)will buy*
4- I'm never late for school , if any is ever late , they ……….them
a)punish *b)will punish* *c)punishes* *d)are punished*
5- He ………..his mind if you insist on it
a)might change *b)will have changed* *c)changes* *d)is changed*
6- If he dies , it …………..a great loss
a)is *b)will be* *c)was* *d)causes*
7- When a great person dies , it …………….a great loss to his country
a)is *b)will be* *c)was* *d)has been*
8- If you plant a tree , it ………….the world to breathe
a)help *b)helps* *c)will help* *d)would help*
9- If you plant a tree , it ……….lovely in a few years
a)look *b)looks* *c)will look* *d)would look*
10 – if you practise a sport , you ………in the sports team
a)are getting *b)will get* *c)get* *d)would get*
10 – if you practise a sport , you ………better at it
a)are getting *b)will get* *c)get* *d)would get*

فرفش مع التمرين الآتى :

1- If you pour hot water onto ice , it ……………
a) would melt *b) melts* *c) is melts* *d) will melt*
2- If you …………..listen , you won't learn anything .
a) don't *b) won't* *c) didn't* *d) wouldn't*
3- My parents are very happy if I ………..my exams .
a) pass *b) will pass* *c) passed* *d) would pass*
4- If I need money , my father …………me .
a) gives *b) would give* *c) gave* *d) has given*
5- If he ……………..hard , he will succeed .
a) studied *b) will study* *c) studies* *d) would study*
6- If I …………….to keep fit , I go to the gym .
a) need *b) will need* *c) needs* *d) needed*
7- What …………….do if you meet Samy tomorrow ?
a) will you *b) you will* *c) would you* *d) you would*

8- If the bark of a tree is badly damaged, the tree ……………………….
a) 'll die b) had died c) died d) dies
9- If a tree has deep roots, it ……… over in strong winds.
a) will fall b) falls c) won't fall d) don't fall
10- If water freezes, it ……… into ice.
a) 'll turn b) turns c) turned d) 'd turn
11- If water is heated to 100C, it ………………….
a) boiling b) will boil c) boils d) is boiled
12- If Hassan ………… the competition, he'll win.
a) had entered b) enters c) entered d) 'll enter
13- If it is a dry year, the rings ……… narrower.
a) are b) were c) 'll be d) had been
14- If scientists study the rings of trees, they …out information about our climate in the past.
a) finds b) found c) can find d) finding
15- Metals …….. if they are heated.
a) will expand b) expand c) would expand d) are expanded
16- ………water evaporate if it is heated?
a) Does b) Will c) Would d) Did

الحالـــــــــــــــــــــــــــــة الثانيـــــــــــــــــــــــــــــة

If ماضى بسيط ⟶ would , might ,could + inf.

ملحوظة : يمكن استخدام might + inf فى الحالة الأولى أو الثانية و الثانية أفضل .

- If I played well , I (will – ***would***) win .
- If he (has – ***had***) money , he would lend me some .
- (***Would you*** – You would) go if he invited you ?
- If he (***studied*** – studies) hard , he would succeed .
- If I (am – ***were***) rich , I would help the poor .
- **تستخدم were بدلاً من was تعبيراً عن الاستحالة .**
- If I (am – ***were***) a bird , I would fly .

بدائـــــــــــــــــل If ـــــــــــــــــــــل

If & were

- **إذا كان فى الجملة were فإننا نقوم بحركة المقص :**
- If I were rich , I would help the needy .
  - Were I rich , I would help the needy .
- If I played well , I would win . (were)
- **فى حالة عدم وجود were فى الجملة الأساسية to + inf فاعل Were**
- Were I to play well , I would win .

Were فاعل + to+inf /صفة – ضمير – اسم ——— would + inf

Were I Ali , I will see the doctor . (would)
- (***Were*** – If) I to study hard , I would pass the exam .

If / Had: ولا تحل محل if إلا إذا كانت فعل أساسى مثل

- If I had a car , I would lend it to you .
  Had I a car , I would lend it to you .

- **Had فاعل + اسم would + inf.**
- (***Had*** – were) I money , I would lend you some .
- (***Were*** – Had) I a doctor , I would help you .

If & should وهو بديل If الحالة الأولى والثانية

Should فاعل ⟶ +inf	Would/will + inf

- Should I play , I (***will win*** – would have won) the match .
- Should I play , I (***would win*** – will have won) the match .
- (***Should*** – Could) I make a plan , I will carry it out .

- و تدل الحالة الثانية على 1) النصح . 2) الاستحالة 3) عكس الواقع
- If I am you, I would see the doctor " **were** "
- If I (was – **were**) a bird, I would fly . استحالة
- If I (was – **were**) rich, I would help the poor . عكس الواقع و يمكن هنا **was** أيضا
- - يمكن أن نستخدم **(Suppose / Supposing (that) / Imagine (that))** بدلا من **(If)** في الحالة الثانية.
- - **Suppose / Supposing / Imagine** (that) you found a job in Cairo, what would you do?



If ماضى تام ⟶ would have + p.p.

- If he had played well , he would (win – ***have won***)
- If he (had – ***had had***) money , he would have built a charity .
- If he (worked – ***had worked***) hard , he would have earned money .
- If he (***earned*** – had earned) money , he would have a villa .



- وتكون بحركة المقص :
- If I had done the homework , my teacher **would have been** happy .
  Had I done the homework , my teacher would have been happy .
- **كيف نفرق بين had فى الحالة الثانية أو الثالثة :**

> ○ **Had فاعل + اسم (n) ⟶ would + inf .**
>
> ○ **Had فاعل + p.p. ⟶ would have + p.p.**

- Had I money , I would (***buy*** – have bought) a car .
- Had I played well , I would (win – ***have won***)

> ○ **If it weren't for + v-ing / n ⟶ would + inf لولا**
>
> ○ **If it hadn't been for + v-ing / n ⟶ would have + p.p لولا**

- If it weren't for Ali , we wouldn't (***solve*** – haven't solved) the problem .
- If it (weren't – ***hadn't***) been for his intelligence , he couldn't have solved the problem .

و تدل الحالة الثالثة على عكس الواقع فى الماضى .

If he played well yesterday, he would have won. " had played "

في مختصر

If 1	مضارع بسيط ,	will + inf	→ مستقبل
If 2	ماضى بسيط ,	would + inf	→ مضــارع
If 3	ماضى تــام ,	would have + inf	→ ماضـــى

- If he comes early tomorrow, I would receive him. (**will**)
- If he is with us now, I would a pologize to him. (**were**)
- If he studied well last year, he would have passed. (**had studied**)

ماذا أختار بعد but

If 1	**but + won't / can't**
If 2	**but + can't / don't / (be) not**
If 3	**but + didn't + inf**

- If I were a doctor, I would help the poor but I (didn't – won't – **am not**)
- If I had gone there, I would have met him but I (hadn't – can't – **didn't**)

اذا كان فعل الشرط منفى فان الفعل بعد but مثبت و العكس

- If I had not gone to Alex , I would have met him but I (hadn't – can't – **did**)= **went**

في الاختيارى لا تضع الكلمة الدالة فى الاعتبار فى المقام الأول إنما توافق الأفعال.

- If he (**came** – comes – had come) early tomorrow, I would receive him.
- If it (**rains** – rained), I won't go out today.

و لكن الدقة قد تأتى فى الشواذ و هو دمج حالتين مع بعض مثل :–

- If had put a plan for the project, it would become successful now.

أى لو أنه وضع الخطة فى الماضى لنجح المشروع الآن .

- If he had won the prize last month, he would be rich now .

أى لو أنه فاز بالجائزة الشهر الماضى لكان غنيا الآن أى الغنى استمر فى الماضى حتى الحاضر .

Choose the correct answer:-

1- I'd have gone if it had been early, but it ……… very late indeed.
A) is b) isn't c) had been d) was

2- If the Sun …….. us heat and light, there would be no life on Earth.
A) doesn't give b) won't give c) didn't give d) hadn't given

3- I ……… study hard if I had an exam.
A) should b) have to c) would d) can

4- If he hadn't looked at the sun, he ……… problems with his eyes.
A) wouldn't have b) didn't have c) hadn't had d) would have had

5- What would you do if you ……… in my position?
A) are b) had been c) were d) have been

6- If it …….. so heavily, we wouldn't have had floods.
A) doesn't rain b) wasn't raining c) didn't rain d) hadn't rained

7- If ……… late for school, I take a taxi.
A) I'm b) I was c) I will be d) I were

8- I'd help if I ………………….
A) ask b) asked c) have asked d) were asked

9- If he ……… late again, never let him in.
A) came b) had come c) comes d) will come

10- What ……… if you had enough money?
a) you would do b) would you do c) would you have done d) you would have done
11- If I ……… in your position, I would accept the offer.
a) will be b) were c) am d) had been
12- If you hadn't left earlier, you ……… your train.
a) would have missed b) will miss c) would miss d) wouldn't have missed
13- If you ……… well, you wouldn't win the race.
a) didn't practice b) don't practice c) practised d) practise
14- She would have bought that skirt if she ……… enough money.
a) has b) had had c) has had d) had

Exercises on Grammar

1. If you watch too much television, you..................... your eyes.
a) will damage b) would have damaged c) won't damage d) would damage
2. If you .... red and green paint, you get brown paint.
a) mixed b) will mix c) had mixed d) mix
3. She .... next week's race if she trains hard.
a) can win b) wins c)won d) would have won
4. If Ahmed had read that book, he .... what happened at the end.
a) knew b) will know c) would know d) would have known
5. If the money I had .... enough, I'd have bought a car.
a) had b) had been c) have been d) were
6. If I went to London, I .... my English every day!
a) would practise b) will practise c) would have practised d) practise
7. I won't go to the park if you .... with me.
a) not come b) don't come c) didn't come d) hadn't come
8. If you .... water, it boils.
a) will heat b) heated c) had heated d) heat
9. Hassan has worked hard for the test. I'll be surprised if he ....
a) doesn't pass b) isn't passing c) hadn't passed d) won't pass
10. If I went to Australia, I .... my cousins.
a) will see b) saw c) would see d) had seen
11. Adel .... bought that phone if it hadn't been so expensive.
a) might b) might have c) will have d) had
12. If those goats eat the bark on the trees, the trees …..……. .
a) die b) will die c) died d) would die
13. If water freezes, ….....…. to ice?
a) Does it turn b) it will turn c) it turns d) it turn
14. If the people hadn't grown enough food, they ….....…. ill.
a) become b) will become c) would have become d) would become
15. If he hadn't driven so fast, he …………….. that accident.
a) wouldn't have b) wouldn't have had c) didn't have d) hadn't had
16. Would Ahmed be angry if I ………..…. his bicycle without asking?
a) take b) will take c) took d) had taken
17. If she hadn't learned how to type, she ………….. so many books.
a) would write b) will write c) wouldn't have written d) would have written
18. If he hadn't been so nervous , he ……………have failed his driving test .
a) would b) wouldn't c) won't d) could
19. Unless he had followed my advice, he …………….. all his money.
a) would have lost b) would have a loss c) wouldn't have lost d) wouldn't lose
20. If you put water in the freezer, ………..…… to ice?
a) turned b) it turns c) will it turn d) Does it turn

21. If you ……….….. earlier, you wouldn't have missed the train.
a) had left b) leave c) would have left d) left
22. If Mona had come ten minutes earlier, she ……….. her boss.
a) would meet b) would have met c) will meet d) meets
23. Would you go to a wedding if you …………………?
a) didn't invite b) hadn't invited c) weren't invited d) invited
24. If I …...............my new car , I wouldn't have a comfortable means of transport
a) had sold b) sold c) sell d) have sold
25. I wouldn’t say it unless it ……………. true.
a) is b) does c) did d) were
26. If it is very hot tomorrow, we ....to the beach.
a) don't go b) wouldn't go c) wouldn't have gone d) won't go
27. People who live near volcanoes leave home if they...............
a) erupt b) erupted c) had erupted d) will erupt
28. If there are clouds in the sky tonight, you ..... able to see the moon.
a) aren't b) wouldn't be c) wouldn't have been d) will not be
29. If you wear a hat, your face .... burnt.
a) won't get b) wouldn't get c) don't get d) can get
30. If he read the story, he....................it.
a) will enjoy b) enjoys c) would enjoy d) can enjoy
31. If she................enough money, she would have to buy a new dress.
a) is having b) has c) had had d) had
32. If you had told me it .... important last week, I would have tried harder.
a) was b) were c) had been d) will be
33. Who knows what..............if he had met her ten years before.
a) would happen b) might happen c) might have happened d) happened
34. If they had won with only ten players, it..............a miracle !
a) had been b) was c) would have been d) would be
35. Everything would have been perfect if it..............yesterday.
a) hadn't rained b) wouldn't rain c) weren't raining d) isn't raining
36. If we didn't get heat and light from the sun, there ....no life on Earth.
a) would have been b) will be c) is d) would be
37. ....OK if you look at the sun wearing sunglasses?
a) Was it b) Will it c) Would it be d) Is it
38. If it went on raining for much longer, the river …..……
a) would flood b) flooded c) floods d) flood
39. If the farmer’s fields had got very dry last summer, he …..…… irrigated them.
a) would have b) wouldn't have c) will have d) won't have
40. If you leave now, ... to take your keys with you.
a) will forget b) don't forget c) won't forget d) forget
41. Water .... if the temperature is zero or below.
a) freeze b) freezes c) would freeze d) is freezing
42. You can borrow this book..................... as you look after it.
a) provided b) if c) as long d) on condition
43. Mother says we can watch TV on .... that we do our homework first.
a) condition b) provided c) long as d) if
44. .... you lost your passport, you’d have to go to the embassy, wouldn’t you?
a) Had b) In case of c) Supposing d) Otherwise
45. If it hadn’t been for ...., my experiments would have failed.
a) your had helped b) your helped c) your help d) you help
46. .... that you lived by the sea, what would you do every day?
a) Condition b) As long c) Imagine d) Supposed
47. .... he decide to come, please let me know as soon as possible.
a) If b) Should c) Were d) Providing
48. .... the temperature falls below zero, it freezes.
a) Unless b) Supposing c) If d) On condition that

49. .... he sleep well tonight, he will feel much happier the next morning.
a) Should b) Imagine that c) Provided that d) As long as

50. Don't go to that restaurant .... you like Chinese food.
a) if b) if not c) unless d) in case

51. Only open this door..................... an emergency.
a) in case b) in case of c) if d) as long as

52. You can go to the park .... you're home at eight o'clock.
a) provided that b) as long c) supposing d) in case

53. You can't drive a car .... you are 18 or older.
a) as long as b) unless c) on condition that d) without

54. .... he to come tomorrow we could borrow his car.
a) Had b) Were c) Should d) If

55. Should she .... full marks, her parents will be over the moon.
a) gets b) got c) had got d) to get

56. If it ....for your help, I wouldn't finish my work on time.
a) weren't b) were c) had been d) hadn't been

57. We wouldn't finish in time .... everyone worked faster.
a) if it weren't for b) providing c) unless d) without

58. Had you eaten too much, you'd .... fatter.
a) got b) have to get c) have got d) get

59. Were she .... full marks, her parents would be over the moon.
a) gets b) got c) had got d) to get

60. Had she .... full marks, her parents would have been over the moon.
a) gets b) got c) get d) to get

61. .... missing the bus, I wouldn't have been late for the test.
a) In case of b) On condition of c) If it weren't d) If it hadn't been for

62. They will invest in the project .... it does not make a lot of money.
a) in case of b) if c) unless d) even if

63. She will graduate next year .... passing all her courses.
a) supposing b) supposes c) in case of d) To suppose

64. Were the company to collapse, many people .... their savings.
a) lost b) lose c) will lose d) would lose

65. Had I known earlier that you wanted to join the team, I................. your name on the list.
a) 'd have put b) 'll have put c) 'll put d) 'd put

66. Don't take this course .... you are ready to study statistics.
a) but for b) in case of c) if d) unless

67. Were ...., I wouldn't permit this.
a) I were you b) I'm c) I you d) I was you

68. Should you need any help, please .... me.
a) called b) would have called c) will call d) call

69. .... the alarm woken me up early. I would have caught the train.
a) Had b) Should c) Were d) Unless

70. We can win the championship, ... avoiding bad injuries.
a) in case of b) but for c) when d) provided that

71. You can take my car .... you drive carefully.
a) provided that b) unless c) even if d) had

72. .... you tell me what is wrong, I can help you.
a) Had b) Were c) Should d) Could

King Lear Act 1 Scene 1

New Vocabulary

act	فصل فى مسرحية	majesty	جلالة الملك
scene	مشهد	foolish	أحمق
king	ملك	sword	سيف
kingdom	مملكة	terrible	فظيع
Duke	دوق / حاكم	kill	يقتل
young man	شاب	lady	سيدة
pleased	مسرور	expect	يتوقع
pleasure	سعادة / سرور	promise	يعد / وعد
daughter	ابنة	hate	يكره
answer	يجيب / اجابة / رد	without	بدون
map	خريطة	suggest	يقترح
large	كبير	suddenly	فجأة
love	يحب	believe	يعتقد / يؤمن
health	صحة	wrong	خطأ
beauty	جمال	queen	ملكة
beautiful	جميل	unkind	غير عطوف
beautify	يجمل	plan	يخطط / خطة
rich	غنى	decide to	يقرر ان
riches	ثروات / أشياء ثمينة	give an answer to	يعطى رد
land	ارض / يهبط	look at	ينظر الى
forest	غابة	look after	يعتنى ب
countryside	الريف	look for	يبحث عن
wife	زوجة	divide…into	يقسم الى
husband	زوج	point to / at	يشير الى
describe	يصف	put feeling into words	يعبر عن مشاعره
description	وصف	change speech	يغير حديثه
duty	واجب / مهمة	wait for	ينتظر ل
marry	يتزوج	in my actions	بالافعال
cruel	قاسى	half of	نصف
honest	أمين	shout about	يبدى سعادة او فخر
strange	اجنبى (صف)	shout at	يصرخ فى
stranger	اجنبى (شخص/اسم)	give….away	يمنح / يهدى
quiet	هادىء	giveaway	هدية ترويجية
power	سلطة	give advice	يعطى نصيحة
title	لقب / عنوان كتاب	cruel = unkind to	قاسى مع

Characters

KING LEAR : The King of Britain

GONERIL : King Lear's eldest daughter

REGAN : King Lear's second daughter

CORDELIA : King Lear's youngest daughter

KING OF FRANCE : He wants to marry Cordelia
DUKE OF BURGUNDY : He also wants to marry Cordelia
DUKE OF ALBANY : Goneril's husband
DUKE OF CORNWALL : Regan's husband
DUKE OF KENT : A good friend of King Lear
DUKE OF GLOUCESTER : A good friend of King Lear
EDGAR : Gloucester's eldest son
EDMUND : Gloucester's youngest son
FOOL : Lear's clown
OSWALD : A servant
OLD MAN : A man who helps Gloucester
GENTLEMAN : A friend of Kent
CAPTAIN : One of Edmund's soldiers
DOCTOR HERALD

Act I Scene i

(In King Lear's Palace.)

(DUKE OF) GLOUCESTER: Ah, the Duke of Kent! Hello, my friend. Have you met my son, Edmund?

(DUKE OF) KENT: I haven't, Kent. He's a fine young man. You must be proud of him.

GLOUCESTER: I'm very proud of him.

EDMUND: I'm pleased to meet you, sir.

GLOUCESTER: Edmund is my second child. I also have another son, Edgar, who is about a year older than Edmund.

EDMUND: Listen! The King is coming. [King Lear enters with Cornwall and Albany and his three daughters, Regan, Goneril and Cordelia. Gloucester and Edmund leave.]

KING LEAR: Listen, everyone. I want to tell you all about my plan. I've decided to give everything in my kingdom to my three daughters, Goneril, Regan and Cordelia. I will also give an answer to the King of France and the Duke of Burgundy. They have both asked to marry my youngest daughter, Cordelia. First, look at this map of my kingdom. I have divided it into three. I want to give the largest part to the daughter who loves me the most. So tell me, my daughters, which of you loves me the most? Goneril, you are the eldest, so you can speak first.

GONERIL: Father, I love you more than anything. No child can love a father more than I love you. I love you more than health, beauty arid riches.

CORDELIA: [To herself.] I love my father, but I don't know what to say!

KING LEAR: [Pointing to the mop] Goneril, you can have all this land, with its green forests and beautiful countryside. Now, Regan, wife of Cornwall. What does my second daughter want to say?

REGAN: Father, Goneril has described her love for you very well. But I have more to say. Your love is the only thing that makes me happy. I love nobody as much as you.

CORDELIA: [To herself.] What can I say? I don't have the words to say how much I love my father.

KING LEAR: Thank you Regan. I will give a third of our beautiful kingdom to you and your children. [To Cordelia Now, Cordelia, my youngest daughter. What can you say to make me give you more than I gave to your sisters?

CORDELIA: I can say nothing, father.

KING LEAR: Nothing? Cordelia, if you say nothing, I will give you nothing. Speak again.
CORDELIA: I cannot put my feelings into words. I love you as a daughter should love a father; but not more, and not less.
KING LEAR: But this is not kind, Cordelia. Change your speech a little, or your future will change, too.
CORDELIA: You have always been a good father and it is my duty to love you too. But my sisters say they only love you. How can this be true? Do they not love their husbands, too? If l marry, I will love my husband as much as my father.
KING LEAR: Cordelia. Do you really mean this? Can you be so young but also so cruel?
CORDELIA: Father, I am young but I am honest.
KING LEAR: Then you are not my daughter any more. You are now a stranger to me. I don't know you.
KENT: But your majesty ...
KING LEAR: Be quiet, Kent! I loved Cordelia, and I wanted her to look after me when I was old. Now she must go! But first, call the King of France and the Duke of Burgundy! While we wait for them, listen to what I say: Goneril and her husband Albany, and Regan with her husband Cornwall, will have half of my kingdom each. They will have all the power and riches that come with being a king. All I want is to keep the title of King, but they will have everything else.
KENT: Your majesty, what do you mean? I must speak honestly when my King is being foolish. Your youngest daughter does not shout about her love for you, but that doesn't mean she loves you the least. You mustn't give your country away like this.
KING LEAR: Say nothing more to me, Kent!
KENT: I am not afraid to make you angry if it will help to protect you.
KING LEAR: Then you must go away too! Leave!
KENT: Let me stay and give you good advice, King Lear. You must learn to see better.
KING LEAR: Oh, you are a cruel man! [He puts his hand on his sword.]
(DUKE OF) CORNWALL: Your majesty, please stop!
KENT: say it again, King Lear. You've done a terrible thing.
KING LEAR: Kent! You've got five days to leave my kingdom, or you'll be killed_ Go!
KENT: Then I'll say goodbye to you, my dear King. [To Cordelia.] I hope you stay safe, young lady, because you were honest. And now I say goodbye to all of you; I shall live my life in a new country. [Gloucester enters with the King of France, the Duke of Burgundy and his men.]
GLOUCESTER: Here are the King of France and the Duke of Burgundy, your majesty.
KING LEAR: Burgundy, I will speak to you first. What do you expect to have you marry my daughter Cordelia?
(**DUKE OF**) **BURGUNDY**: Your majesty, I only expect to have what you promised me.
KING LEAR: I am sorry, but things have changed. Sir, there she is. You can marry her.
BURGUNDY: I don't understand.
KING LEAR: You'll get my daughter and nothing more. Take her, or leave her. It's your choice.
BURGUNDY: I'm sorry, sir. I cannot marry her without some of your land.

KING LEAR: Then leave her, sir.
CORDELIA: Goodbye, Burgundy! I see now that you love things more than you love me, so I shall not be your wife.
KING LEAR: [To the King of France.] So, the great King of France, I don't want you to marry someone I hate; so I suggest you give your love to a better girl.
(**KING OF**) **FRANCE**: But sir, Cordelia was your favourite daughter! It is very strange that she has suddenly lost all your love. I cannot believe that Cordelia could do anything terrible to anyone.
CORDELIA: [To King Lear.] Father, understand that I show my love in my actions, not my words. Please tell him that I haven't done anything wrong to make you hate me.
KING LEAR: I shall not. Go! You will have nothing from me!
KING OF FRANCE: My beautiful Cordelia, you are richer for being poor and I love you more now that you are hated! I'm happy for you to be my wife.
[To the King.] Your daughter will be queen of my country. Say goodbye to them, Cordelia, although they've been unkind to you. You have lost your life here, but you'll find a better one with me.
KING LEAR: She is yours, King of France; I'll never see her face again. [To Cordelia.] Leave now, without my love. Come with me, Burgundy. [King Lear leaves with Burgundy, Cornwall, Albany, and Gloucester]

Exercises on Part 4 KING LEAR Act I Scene i

Choose the correct answer:

1-A/ An………means a larger part of a play.
(scene – tale – act – action)
2- A/ An………means a person that acts plays.
(audience – author – character – writer)
3- A/ An………means a small part of a play which happens in one place.
(scene – chapter – act – tale)
4- A/ An………means a piece of writing that is written for acting in a theatre.
(event – novel – occasion – play)
5- A/ An………means a long, sharp knife.
(arrow – sword – gun – cannon)
6-An official name of a job means a/ an……….
(inspector – title – director – address)
7-Lear is the main……….in Shakespeare's King Lear.
(character – kingdom – technique – allowance)
8-I arrived at the theatre late and missed the first……..of the play.
(action – actor – act – stage)
9-The movie contains certain…….which may scare children.
(directors – scenes – actors – trophies)
10-A president governs a republic, but a king rules a/an…….
(island – oasis – kingdom – district)
11-Mum divided the big room……two small rooms. **(into – onto – to – for)**
12-Every citizen should know his rights and……….
(duties – exercises – mistakes – practices)

13-To give them all your money for nothing, you are……….
(selfish – wise – brave – foolish)
14-It's difficult for any footballer to…the title of the best player in the world for years.
(reserve – keep – promote – stay)
15-Cutting down……..is a reason for the global warming phenomenon.
(factories – forests – investments – resorts)
16-Egypt is full of………., but we don't make the best use of them.
(injuries – earthquakes – riches – weaknesses)
17-The police officer asked me to……….the man who stole my bag.
(arrest – develop – describe – forget)
18-Soldiers in the past used their……….to fight in battles.
(arms – knives – swords – hands)
19-We mustn't be so……..to pets. They should be treated well.
(helpful – polite – cruel – generous)
20-Can you ………. me an answer to this question, please?
(have – get – give – spell)
21-A president governs a republic, but a /an ……… rules a kingdom.
(Duke – Earl – king – Officer)
22-Although he is 83 years old, …….Magdi Yacoub is still helping many people.
(Duke – King – President – Sir)
23-Please, divide the apple into……… Take one and give your sisters the other two.
(halves – thirds – quarters – a half)
24-The new department store offers kitchen items as free……..to attract new customers.
(runways – giveaways – surveys – gateways)
25-He hasn't chosen a/ an………for his newest novel yet.
(title – address – cell – flat)
26-The police arrive soon at the……of the accident.
(scene – seen – chapter – act)
27-You can wait for the doctor or leave and come another time. It's your…….
(voice – noise – choice – notice)
28-His……, the King, requests your presence at the royal palace at once.
(pardon – excellence – highness – majesty)
29-Before he died, he………most of his money to charity.
(took over – gave up – shouted out – gave away)
30-My sister's exam results are something to……… She got the full mark in all of them.
(call for – take up – reply to – shout about)

……………………………………………………………………………………………..

King Lear Act 1 Scene 2

New Vocabulary

palace	قصر	advice	نصيحة
fail	يفشل	exit	يخرج / مخرج
failure	فشل	deceive	يخدع
planning	تخطيط	fool	غبى / أحمق
discover	يكتشف	serious	خطير / جاد
truth	حقيقة	loyal to	مخلص ل
ill health	صحة مريضة	loyalty to	اخلاص ل
bring	يحضر / يجلب	in the future	فى المستقبل
power	قوة / سلطة	good to	جيد / طيب مع
anger	غضب	good for	مفيد ل
angry	غاضب	good at	جيد فى
problem	مشكلة	take care of	يعتنى ب
castle	قلعة	look after	يعتنى ب
letter	خطاب	fail to + inf.	يفشل أن
inherit	يرث	prepare for	يجهز / يعد ل
inheritance	ارث	in his old age	فى كبر عمره
heir	وريث	keep money from	يبعد نقود عن
heiress	وريثة	go out	يخرج
clever	ماهر	worried about	قلق بشأن
succeed	ينجح / يخلف	angry with	غاضب من(شخص)
success	نجاح / ناجح	find out (about)	يكتشف عن
successful	ناجح	throw in	يرمى فى
beat	يهزم / يضرب	It's time to +inf.	انه وقت أن...
notice	يلاحظ / ملاحظة	It's time for (n) (v-ing)	انه وقت من أجل
hide	يختبىء	what to do	ماذا ان نفعل
pocket	جيب	in the end	فى النهاية
forgive	يسامح	stay with	يبقى مع
test	اختبار / يختبر	a poor decision	قرار ضعيف(بائس)
discuss	يناقش	make a decision	يتخذ قرار
conversation	محادثة	become mad	يصبح مجنونا
immediately	فى الحال / فورا	discover the truth	يكتشف الحقيقة
honest	أمين	know the truth	يعرف الحقيقة
strange	غريب	tell the truth	يقول الحقيقة
die	يموت	have(make) a plan	لديه / يصنع خطة
dead	ميت	through a window	من خلال الشباك
income	دخل	become a problem for	تصبح مشكلة ل
handwriting	كتابة اليد / خط اليد	listen to a conversation	يستمع للمحادثة
adult	بالغ	say unkind things to	يقول اشياء غير طيبة
cruel	قاسى	=say anything unkind to	يقول اى شىء غير طيب
dangerous	خطير	go near	يقترب

Act I, Scene I, continued

[In King Lear's Palace]

FRANCE: Cordelia, it is time to leave your country now. Say goodbye to your sisters.

CORDELIA: Goneril and Regan, I am sad to leave you both. My heart is broken. Be good to our father. If he still loved me, I'd take good care of him! Please look after him well.

GONERIL: Don't tell us what to do, Cordelia.

REGAN: Yes, go to your husband. You've failed to do what your father asked you to do. Now, you've got what you deserve.

CORDELIA: I don't know what you are planning, sisters, but remember everyone discovers the truth in the end. Goodbye!

FRANCE: Come with me, my dear Cordelia. [The King of France and Cordelia leave.]

GONERIL: Sister Regan, we must talk. I think our father will leave here tonight.

REGAN: I'm sure he will, and he'll leave with you. Next month, he'll stay with my husband Cornwall and I.

GONERIL: Our father always loved Cordelia the most, and a poor decision has made him send her away.

REGAN: He is becoming a little mad in his old age.

GONERIL: Even when he was younger and healthy, he was a difficult man. So we must be prepared for what ill health and old age will bring.

REGAN: He was angry when he sent Kent away today. He will probably be angry more often in the future.

GONERIL: Let's sit together and talk. If our father still has some power, his anger will become a problem for us.

REGAN: You are right. Let's think about what we can do.

GONERIL: We must do something, and quickly.

(At the Duke of Gloucester's Castle. Edmund enters with a letter.)

EDMUND: My father Gloucester says that his first son, Edgar, will get his land when he dies. But why should I not have my inheritance just because I'm twelve or fourteen months younger than my brother? Is it just because I'm the second son? I'm just as strong and kind as my brother, and as clever too. Well, elder brother, Edgar, I will have your land. Our father loves me, his younger son, as much as he loves you. And I have a letter here. If this letter succeeds, then Edmund the younger son will beat the older son Edgar!

[Gloucester enters.]

GLOUCESTER: All Edmund, my son! Have you heard? The King has sent Kent away! And the King of France has left with Cordelia! And the King has left the palace tonight without his powers! This has all happened so quickly!

[Gloucester notices Edmund hiding the letter.]

What are you doing Edmund?
EDMUND: Nothing, father.
GLOUCESTER: Why are you trying to hide that letter? What's in it?
EDMUND: Nothing, sir.
GLOUCESTER: Then, why did you hide it in your pocket? Let me see it.
EDMUND: Please forgive me, father. It is a letter from my brother Edgar that I haven't finished reading yet; but I don't think you should read it.
GLOUCESTER: Let me see that!
EDMUND: OK, but I hope he only wrote this to test me and my loyalty to my family,
GLOUCESTER: [Reads the letter.]
When we respect older people too much, it makes it hard for the young to live well. Our parents keep our money from us until we are too old to enjoy it Older people only have power because we give it to them. Come and see me, so that we can discuss this. If our
father were dead, you could enjoy half his income, and be loved by your brother Edgar.'
Did my son Edgar write this letter? When did you receive this? Who brought it?
EDMUND: It wasn't brought to me, sir. I found it. It was thrown in through my bedroom window.
GLOUCESTER: Are you sure the writing is your brother's?
EDMUND: Yes, it is his handwriting, father.
GLOUCESTER: Has he ever talked to you about this before?
EDMUND: No, never. But I've often heard him say that when a son becomes an adult, he should be given some of his father's income.
GLOUCESTER: Oh, what a cruel son! Go and find him, Edmund. Where is he?
EDMUND: I don't know, father. Please, don't be angry with my brother. Let's find out what he meant, then you can decide what to do. I'm sure he wrote this to test my love and loyalty to you, and for nothing more dangerous than that.
GLOUCESTER: Do you really think so?
EDMUND: Yes. Listen, I have a plan. I'll hide you somewhere tonight. I'll discuss it with my brother and you can listen to our conversation. Then you'll know what he really thinks.
GLOUCESTER: My son cannot be so cruel to a father who loves him so much. Edmund, find Edgar and make him talk to you. I want to know the truth.
EDMUND: I'll go and find him immediately.
GLOUCESTER: Find him, Edmund, and be careful. (to himself) What is happening? I cannot believe that Kent has been sent away! He is an honest man. It is all too strange.
(Gloucester exits. Edgar enters.)
EDMUND: Ah, Edgar. There you are. How are you? When did you last see our father?
EDGAR: I am well, Edmund. I saw our father last night.
EDMUND: And did you talk to him?

EDGAR: **Yes, we spent two hours together.**
EDMUND: **Did you say anything unkind to him? He's very angry with you at the moment. Please don't go near him until he's less angry.**
EDGAR: **Really? Then somebody has lied about me.**
EDMUND: **That's what I'm worried about. Stay with me for now. I'll take you to see our father when he feels better. Here's my key. Oh, and if you go out, take your sword.**
EDGAR: **My sword? But why?**
EDMUND: **That's the best advice I can give you. Please, go quickly!**
[Edgar exits.]
EDMUND: **My brother and father trust me, which makes them easy to deceive. I need these two fools to make my plan work. If I can't get some land in the correct way, I'll have to be clever to get it.**
[Edmund exits.]

Exercises on KING LEAR Act I Scene i/ Scene ii

Choose the correct answer:

1-A/ An………means a fully grown person who is legally responsible for their actions.
(teenager – baby – adult – toddler)
2- ……means the money, property, etc. that you receive from someone after they died..
(Inheritance – Expectation – Tolerance – Intention)
3-A strong feeling of support or allegiance means………
(responsibility – loyalty – creativity – popularity)
4-To make someone believes something that is not true means to…….him/her.
(employ – include – deceive – create)
5-My little sister always tells the…….. She never lies.
(truth – truce – lies – heir)
6-It is natural to feel…….sometimes, but it is important to learn to control it.
(trust – anger – ill – sweet)
7-Ahmed is always a/an…..friend, and never does anything to hurt me.
(existent – loyal – awful – faithless)
8-My father has finally ……in his attempts to quit smoking.
(deceived – succeeded – managed – abled)
9-Stress often brings……..health and damages the body.
(mental – physical – good – ill)
10-I think that…….is the most important quality that a best friend can show you.
(survival – loyalty – disloyalty – treasure)
11-We really wanted to climb the mountain, and we all felt very happy when we………
(deserved – succeeded – deceived – served)
12-My uncle has a small……as a cleaner.
(product – income – quantity – extraction)
13-You can go into the building one way and……through a different door.

(enter – exit – fall – succeed)

14-I……….one million dollar from my uncle, who died last month.

(succeeded – kidnapped – inherited – produced)

15-I really…….your opinion. That's why I've come here to ask you for advice.

(serve – rust – trust – anger)

16-Unfortunately, surgeons………to save the young lady's life. She died while having an operation.

(failed – fell – felt – felled)

17-Your …….is too difficult to read. I tried many times, but I couldn't read it.

(option – occasion – handwriting – products)

18-We must all take care to preserve those old buildings as they are part of our cultural and historical……………..

(heritage – celebration – heir – survival)

19-Our neighbour doesn't have any sons or daughters. After his death, his nephews will be his only…………..

(inheritance – heritage – heirs – celebrities)

20-There is a fire……….next to the men's bathroom, through which you can evacuate the building in case of emergency.

(service – exit – income – product)

21-I took a good care………my grandfather when he suffered from coronavirus.

(with – in – on – of)

22-After breaking his mother's mobile, he……to be punished by staying at home at the weekend. **(discussed – deserved – described – reserved)**

23-He was…….away from the playground because of his bad behaviour.

(done – spent – sent – lent)

24-He managed to………them by his fake news.

(receive – deceive – believe – grieve)

25-They swore their………to the king.

(ability – royal – loyal – loyalty)

26-After the king's death, the title passed by……..to the eldest son.

(confidence – intelligence – difference – inheritance)

27-Do you think Mohamed Mahmoud's injury is………? He was taken to hospital after the match. **(funny – serious – series – broken)**

28-It's important to……, but the most important is to get high marks to join a good university. **(succeed – fail – fall – test)**

29-It is important to control your feeling of………

(anger – truth – lie – income)

30-The seller says that this purse is made of original leather, but I don't …….him.

(deceive – succeed – lie – trust)

……………………………………………………………………………………………..

King Lear Act 1 Scene ii /scene iv

New Vocabulary

servant	خادم	solve	يحل
hit	يضرب	solution	حل
pull	جندى	behave	يتصرف / يسلك
exit	يخرج	behaviour	سلوك / تصرف
body	جسم	mad	مجنون
unhappy	غير سعيد	noisy	ضوضائى
foolish (adj)	غبى	noise	ضوضاء
fool (n)	شخص غبى / مهرج	power	سلطة / قوة
exist	يوجد	guilt	ذنب
existence	وجود	guilty	مذنب
disguise	يتنكر	work hard	يعمل بجد
ready	جاهز	(be) guilty of	مذنب بشأن
honest	امين	behave badly	يتصرف سيئا
dishonest	غير امين	get angry about	يغضب من (شىء)
follow	يتبع	get angry with	يغضب من (شخص/شىء)
well	حسنا / بصحة جيدة	stay with	يبقى مع
rude	وقح	have the power	لديه السلطة
notice	يلاحظ / ملاحظة	give away	يتخلص من/ يستغنى
immediately	فى الحال	in different clothes	بملابس مختلفة
hold	يمسك	work for	يعمل لدى
cart	عربة كارو	give advice	يعطى نصيحة
encourage	يشجع	unkind to	غير طيب مع
wise	حكيم	What's the matter?	ما الامر؟
surprise	مفاجأة	rather than	بدلا من
surprised	مندهش	have trouble	لديه متاعب
surprising	مدهش	angry with	غاضب من شخص
shout	يصرخ / صرخة	make problems	يسبب مشكلات
mad	مجنون	have problems	لديه مشكلات
attendants	الحاضرين	a taste of her own medicine	جزاء من نفس العمل
attack	يهجم / هجوم	hold his head	يمسك رأسه
safe	أمن	encourage…to + inf	يشجع....على فعل شىء
save	يوفر / ينقذ / يحفظ	pull the horse	يجر الحصان
safety	أمان	prepare the horse	يجهز الحصان
safely	بأمان	The cart is pulling a horse	الامور ليست فى الوضع الصحيح

Act I, Scenes iii-iv

(At the Duke of Albany's Palace. Goneril enters with her servant Oswald)

GONERIL: Did my father, King Lear, hit my servant?
OSWALD: Yes, madam.
GONERIL: 1 must do something. His soldiers are starting to behave badly, and my father gets angry about everything. When he comes here, I won't speak to him. I'll tell him that I am ill.
OSWALD: He's coming, madam; I can hear him.
GONERIL: Tell the other servants not to do what he asks them. If he's unhappy, he can stay with my sister. The foolish old man still wants to have the power that he's given away!
OSWALD: Yes, madam.
GONERIL: write to my sister immediately and tell her my plans.

[She exits.]

[At the Duke of Albany's Palace. Kent enters in different clothes.]

KENT: I've disguised myself in different clothes, and I have changed now I usually speak, so I can help the man who told me to leave. I still love the King and continue to work hard for him, but he won't know me.

[King Lear enters with soldiers and servants.]

KING LEAR: Get my dinner ready.

[A servant exits.]

[To Kent] Who are you?
KENT: I am a poor but honest man.
KING LEAR: What do you want?
KENT: I want to help you, sir.
KING LEAR: Do you know me?
KENT: No, sir; but I want to help you because I can see that you are an important man.
KING LEAR: What can you do?
KENT: I can give good and honest advice.
KING LEAR: Then follow me. You can be my servant.

[Oswald enters.]

You, where's my daughter?
OSWALD: I'm sorry, sir ...

[He exits.]

KING LEAR: What did the man say? Call him back.
SOLDIER: He said that your daughter wasn't well,
KING LEAR: Why didn't he come back when I called him?
SOLDIER: Your majesty, he was very rude. I don't know what the problem is; but the servants, the Duke and your daughter are all being very unkind to you.
KING LEAR: I've noticed that too. But where's my Fool? I haven't seen him for two days.
SOLDIER: He has been very unhappy since Cordelia went to France.
KING LEAR: Don't say her name to me! Go and tell Goneril that I want to speak to her.

[The soldier exits. Oswald and the Fool enter.]

Oh, you, come here! Who am I?
OSWALD: My lady's father.
KING LEAR: My lady's father? How rude!

[King Lear hits him.]

OSWALD: Don't hit me, my lord.
KENT: [Hitting him.] Don't be rude to the King or hit you, tool
KING LEAR: Thank you. You are a good man.

[Goneril enters.]

LEAR: What's the matter, Goneril? Why are you holding your head?
FOOL: You should worry, old King, because you gave everything away, rather than worrying about her head. One day, you will want everything back.
GONERIL: Father, are you encouraging your men to behave badly? Your Fool says and does what he wants.
FOOL: Even a fool knows when the cart is pulling the horse.
KING LEAR: Does anyone here know who I am? Tell me!
GONERIL: You're old and you should be wise. But you're keeping a hundred soldiers here; they are noisy and rude. Please don't have so many soldiers, and only keep the men who can behave well.
KING LEAR: [angry] What did you say? Call my soldiers. You won't have any more trouble from me, because now I have only one daughter left.
[Albany enters and he is very surprised]

[To the soldiers.] Prepare my horses.

ALBANY: Please, sic wait.
KING LEAR: [To himself.] Oh, why was 1 angry with Cordelia? She was not as rude to rue as **Goneril**. Why was I so foolish?
ALBANY: Your majesty 1 don't know what's made you angry, but I'm not guilty.
KING LEAR: That might be true, but listen. If Goneril has a child one day, and the child is cruel to her, she will understand how I feel. Then she will have a taste of her own medicine.

[King Lear exits.]

ALBANY: What has happened, Goneril?
GONERIL: Nothing. Let him shout. He is a mad old man.

[King Lear enters again.]

KING LEAR: Goneril, you have told fifty of my soldiers to go!
ALBANY: What is the matter, sir?
KING LEAR: I'll tell you. [To Goneril] I cannot believe that you have the power to make me so unhappy. But you have. I still have one daughter left, and I am sure she will be kind to me when she hears what you have done. She will not be happy with you!

[King Lear exits with Kent, and Attendants.]

GONERIL: Did you hear that, my husband?
ALBANY: You know how much I love you, Goneril, but
GONERIL: Do not say more. [To the Fool.] You, go.

[The Fool exits.]

GONERIL: Is it a good idea to let him keep a hundred soldiers to help him in his old age? They might attack us.
ALBANY: I think you are worrying too much.
GONERIL: It's better to worry and be safe. I've written to my sister Regan and told her everything. I'm not angry with you because you asked me to be kinder to my father, but you are being foolish.

ALBANY: Maybe you know more than I do, Goneril, but I think you are making problems rather than solving them.

[They exit.)

Exercises on KING LEAR Act I Scene iii - iv

Choose the correct answer:

1-To………means to try to hurt someone.
(attack – attract – protect – reserve)
2-Some children are…….to their mothers when they are upset.
(rude – rode – kind – polite)
3-She………herself as a man so she could fight on the battlefield.
(disguised – created – killed – invented)
4-If someone is wise, they are ………
(mad – clever – foolish – crazy)
5-My father is starting to………angry with everything.
(fall – get – go – being)
6-The……who works in our house is good. That's why my father gives him a good salary.
(serpent – servant – slave – prince)
7-Doctors should……….heavy smokers to give up smoking.
(discourage – dissuade – dishearten – encourage)
8-My sister is ……… She always tells the truth and doesn't cheat or steal.
(honest – dishonest – deceitful – criminal)
9-My mother ………me a good piece of advice yesterday.
(took – gave – made – received)
10-I don't like nightclubs because they are too crowded and………
(quiet – useful – noisy – calm)
11-The policeman……..himself not to be recognized by the criminals.
(disbelieved – disappeared – disturbed – disguised)
12-I had a bad headache and…….my head with pain.
(held – told – folded – called)
13-After painting our flat we……..away all our old things.
(got – gave – brought – escaped)
14-At first, some people thought him……., but he wasn't the killer.
(nasty – guilty – innocent – tolerant)
15-Instead of solving the problem, he……….another one.
(did – gave – made – spent)
16-When I got low marks, I was…….because I expected more than that.
(delighted – fascinated – exhausted – surprised)
17-Being………, no one likes him.
(polite – cheerful – rude – clever)
18-Everything is………for the celebration. We hope it will be nice.
(repaired – behaved – prepared – attended)
19-Although they were……..all the match, they received two goals.
(attracting – taking – practicing – attacking)
20-To……means to change your appearance so that people cannot recognize you.
(interrupt – disturb – confuse – disguise)

General Exercises on Act 1

Choose the correct answer

1. It's impolite to .... while talking with your parents.
a. shut **b. shout** **c. shoot** **d. shuttle**
2. What a goal! That was a real beauty. The word "beauty" is a/an …………… .
a. noun **b. verb** **c. adjective** **d. adverb**
3. I know the singer's name but I don't know the………….... of the song.
a. address **b. spelling** **c. rhyme** **d. title**
4. You can count on him because he always tells the …………….. .
a. lies **b. habit** **c. fact** **d. truth**
5. All my neighbours .... Mr Ali because he is a good man.
a. suspect **b. neglect** **c. respect** **d. affect**
6. We should meet to ……………….. the elections program for the party.
a. discuss **b. deserve** **c. disappoint** **d. disappear**
7. He was filled with .... at the bad way he had been treated.
a. happiness **b. anger** **c. confidence** **d. fun**
8. She was guilty…………….. stealing the gold necklace.
a. in **b. at** **c. with** **d. of**
9. After burning her neighbour's house, a fire started in her house to have a taste of her own …
a. medicine **b. drugs** **c. cigarette** **d. lighter**
10. The rude child shouted at his mother badly. Is the cart. ………….. a horse?
a. eating **b. pulling** **c. pushing** **d. feeding**
11. Something you do because it is right or part of your job means a/an…………… .
a. right **b. attitude** **c. duty** **d. intention**
12. To separate something into two or more parts means to…………….. .
a. divide **b. share** **c. multiply** **d. perform**
13. ………… means not sensible or clever.
a. Selfish **b. Foolish** **c. Tolerant** **d. Confident**
14. A country that has a king or a queen means a/an ……………… .
a. area **b. state** **c. kingdom** **d. environment**
15. ………….. mean a lot of money and valuable things.
a. Measures **b. Powers** **c. Stages** **d. Riches**
16. To.................. means that it is right for someone to have something because of the way they have behaved or because what they are.
a. deserve **b. preserve** **c. serve** **d. reserve**
17. Money received, especially on a regular basis, for Work or through investments means a/an…………. .
a. treasure **b. pleasure** **c. income** **d. inheritance**
18.To…………..means to believe in the reliability, truth, or ability of Someone.
a. hurt **b. trust** **c. treat** **d. defeat**
19. A/An…………. means a person whose job is to serve or help people in a public place.
a. expert **b. attendant** **c. servant** **d. designer**

King Lear Act II Scene i /scene ii

New Vocabulary

castle	قلعة	disguise	يتنكر
plan	خطة / يخطط	beg	يتوسل / يشحذ
guard	حارس / يحرس	beggar	شحاذ / متسول
ready	جاهز / مستعد	dirty	قذر
arrest	يقبض على	disbelief	عدم تصديق
hide	يختبئ /يخبئ	belief	تصديق / ايمان
pretend	يتظاهر	faithful	مخلص
fight	مشاجرة / يتشاجر	answer	رد / اجابة / يرد
Pick up	يلتقط	wrong	خطأ / مخطئ
sword	سيف	catch	يقبض على / يمسك
quickly	بسرعة	back	ظهر
blood	دم	stocks	عمود خشبى (للتعذيب)
cut	يجرح / جرح	in the stocks	فى الفلق (الة تقييد)
injured	مصاب	call out	يصرخ / ينادى
follow	يتبع	change his mind	يغير رأيه
finally	فى النهاية	a stab in the back	طعنة فى الظهر
terrible	فظيع	my heart is broken	قلبى محطم
reward	مكافأة / يكافئ	what happened?	ماذا حدث؟
award	جائزة / يمنح جائزة	refuse a plan	يرفض خطة
persuade	يقنع	stop a plan	يمنع خطة
persuasion	اقناع	run away = escape	يهرب
persuasive	مقنع	stop people from	يمنع الناس من
profit	يربح / ربح	plot against	يتأمر ضد
stab	يطعن / طعنة	careful of	حريص على
port	ميناء	look dirty	يبدو متسخ / قذر
inherit	يرث	faithful to	مخلص ل
inheritance	ميراث	(be) in a fight	فى معركة / شجار
correct	صحيح / يصحح	get (to)	يصل لى
plot	يتأمر / مؤامرة	get here	يصل هنا
kill	يقتل	guilty	مذنب
warn	يحذر	guilt	ذنب
duty	واجب	safe	أمن

Act II, Scenes i-ii

[In the Castle of the Duke of Gloucester. Edmund enters.]

EDMUND: [To himself.] So, I hear that the Duke of Cornwall is coming here tonight. That's good! It will help my plan a lot. My father has a guard ready to arrest my brother. But there's one more thing I should do first. Here's Edgar.
[Edgar enters.]
Brother, can we talk? Our father's coming here soon, so you must go! He knows you are hiding here. But first, we must pretend to fight. Pick up your sword. Quickly, before our father gets here. Now run from here, brother.
[Calls out.] Help me!
[To his brother again.] Goodbye, Edgar.
[Edgar exits.]
[To himself.] If there's some blood on me, people will think I've been in a fight.
[He cuts his arm.] Father, father! Stop him, stop him! Help
[Gloucester enters with servants.]
EDMUND: Look, at my arm, father, I'm injured.
GLOUCESTER: What happened? Where's Edgar?
EDMUND: He ran that way. When I refused his plan
GLOUCESTER: You there, follow him!
[Some servants exit.] What plan, Edmund?
EDMUND: His plan is to kill you, father. I told him that I loved you. Finally, when he understood that I didn't want to help with his terrible plan, he cut my arm with his sword. Then he saw that 1 was ready to fight him, and he quickly ran away.
GLOUCESTER: He'll not run very far. If he stays in this country, we'll soon find him. Then we'll arrest him. The Duke of Cornwall is coming here tonight. I will tell him that there's a reward for any man who finds Edgar. And anyone who hides him will be arrested, too.
EDMUND: Father, I tried to persuade Edgar to stop his plan, but he wanted to continue with it. I told him that I would tell you all about it. "Do you think anyone will believe you?" Edgar said. "No. say that it was all your idea. They know that you will profit most if father dies, not me!'
GLOUCESTER: This is terrible! It is a stab in the back. I'll stop people from leaving England's ports; Edgar won't leave the country. Thank you, my loving son Edmund. Now I will do everything to help you. You will inherit all my land.
[The Duke of Cornwall enters with his wife Regan and servants.]
CORNWALL: Gloucester, how are you, my friend? Since I've arrived here, I've heard some strange news.
REGAN: If it is true, it is terrible news!
GLOUCESTER: Oh Regan, my heart is broken!
REGAN: Did your son really try to kill you? Your son Edgar?
GLOUCESTER: Yes, it's true! I wish it were different.
REGAN: I know Edgar spent time with my father's soldiers.
EDMUND: That's correct, madam, he spent some time with them.
REGAN: Then the soldiers have given him the idea of plotting against his father, trying to kill him, so that he can use his father's money. I've just had a message from my sister Goneril about the soldiers. She has warned me to be careful of them. If they come to my house, I won't be there.
CORNWALL: Edmund, I hear that you've been a good son to your father.
EDMUND: It was my duty, sir.
GLOUCESTER: Edmund told me of Edgar's plan, and he got this cut on his arm when he tried to stop him.

CORNWALL: Is anyone following Edgar?
GLOUCESTER: Yes, I've sent some guards.
CORNWALL: The guards must arrest him. Edmund, I'd like you to work for me. I need men like you that I can trust.
EDMUND: I'd be happy to help you, sir.
GLOUCESTER: I thank you, Cornwall
[They exit.]
(In the countryside. Edgar enters.)
EDGAR: I've heard people say that I'm guilty! But I was riot caught, because I hid in this old tree. It's not safe for me to go to any port now. Guards are looking for me. So I must disguise myself as a beggar. I will change my clothes and make my face and hair look dirty.
[He changes his clothes.]
I'll wear these clothes of a poor man, and live outside under the rain. Nobody will see Edgar any more. From now, I'll call myself Poor Tom.
[Edgar exits.]
[Enter, Lear, Fool and Knight. Kent is in the stocks.]
KENT: Good morning, my lord.
KING LEAR: **[Looks in disbelief at Kent in the stocks]** What has happened? Who did this to you?
KENT: It was your daughter Regan and her husband Cornwall, sir.
KING LEAR: But you are working for the King! They should not do this to you! This is terrible. Where's my daughter?
[King Lear exits.]
KENT: Fool, why has the King got so few soldiers now? FOOL: He has no money, so he has fewer people to help him. But I'll be faithful to him; the Fool will always stay, and let the wise men run away.
[King Lear and Gloucester enter together.]
KING LEAR: Why don't they want to speak to me? You say they are sick? They are tired? That's no answer.
GLOUCESTER: I'm sorry, your majesty, but you know that the Duke of Cornwall easily feels angry. He won't change his mind.
KING LEAR: What? He's angry! Well, I'm angry, too!
[He sees Kent in the stocks again.]
Why is he sitting in the stocks? Go and tell the Duke of Cornwall and his wife that I want to speak to them, now!
[Gloucester exits.]
KING LEAR: Oh, my heart, my unhappy heart!
[Cornwall, Regan, Gloucester and Servants enter]
REGAN: Father, I'm pleased to see you.
KING LEAR: My dear daughter Regan, your sister is nothing to me. Oh Regan, she's been so cruel to me! You won't believe how badly she has behaved.
REGAN: I don't think my sister could be unkind to you. If she has stopped your badly behaved soldiers, she has only done it to help you.
KING LEAR: I'm very angry with her!
REGAN: Father, please go back to my sister's house; you're the one who is wrong, not my good sister Goneril.

Exercises on KING LEAR Act II Scene i - ii

Choose the correct answer:

1-A / An……..means money for someone who finds or helps someone important.
(award – gift – reward – assistance)
2-Someone who asks other people for food or money means a/ an…………
(blogger – beggar – lawyer – expert)
3-To make benefit from something means to……..
(use – select – deduce – profit)
4-………means the feeling that something cannot really be happening.
(Disbelief – Shame – Disappearance – Shy)
5-To act in a way that is not true means to………
(intend – attend – pretend – extend)
6-A / An…….means someone who protects a place or a person.
(guide – guard – assistant – explorer)
7-The officer……..the criminal to lie down and raise his hands.
(claimed – begged – ordered – said)
8-The mother…….her child not to come near the fire.
(warned – said – talked – spoke)
9-To "stab someone in the back" means to do something……to someone who trusted you.
(harmful – useful – attractive – funny)
10-A / An……….is someone who protects a place or a person.
(architect – archaeologist – guard – oculist)
11-I finally managed to…….her to go to the zoo with me.
(make – persuade – dissuade – let)
12-A / An……..is a place where ships enter and leave a town or country.
(airport – board – shuttle – port)
13-We admire people who remain…….to their principles to the last.
(disloyal – wicked – faithful – evil)
14-My father gave me a / an………because I came first in my class.
(award – punishment – reward – money)
15-This shop's daily……..is usually around 1000 pounds. The owner must be happy.
(loss – profit – prophet – debt)
16-He…..up his cap from the floor and stuck it back on his head.
(prayed – woke – rose – picked)
17-On seeing the police officer, the thief ran…………
(way – away – a way - over)
18-The policeman……the criminal and sent him to prison.
(was caught – rewarded – arrested – awarded)
19-My name is Ramy, but my friends ……….me Romeo.
(call – cool – speak – talk)
20-They asked me to…..their house while they were away. They trusted him so much.
(rob – break – guard – destroy)

King Lear Act II Scene iii / Act III scene i

New Vocabulary

cruel	قاسى	against	ضد
rude	وقح	army	جيش
hold	يمسك	port	ميناء
behave	يسلك	show	يعرض / عرض
behaviour	سلوك	ring	خاتم / يتصل
choice	اختيار	apologise	يعتذر
mad	مجنون	room	حجرة / فراغ
patient	صبور / مريض	double	يضاعف
patience	صبر	stay warm	يبقى دافئا
huge	ضخم	lock.....out	يطرد
storm	عاصفة	turn....back on	يتخلى عن
danger	خطر	set eyes on	يرى
bring	يحضر	go mad	يصاب بالجنون
beggar	متسول	keep you warm	يحفظك دافئا
nearly	تقريبا	I'd rather + inf.	يفضل
blow	يهب	It's a wet night	انها ليلة ممطرة
nowhere	لا مكان	apologise to someone	يعتذر لشخص
shelter	مأوى / يأوى	apologise for	يعتذر عن
teach	يعلم	stay with	يبقى مع
lock	يغلق / قفل	cruel to	قاسى مع
persuade	يقنع	rude to	وقح مع
terrible	فظيع	look at	ينظر الى
weather	طقس	until the end of	حتى نهاية
fight	يتشاجر / مشاجرة	in front of	امام
cave	كهف	ask....for	يطلب
bear	دب / يتحمل	go back with	يعود مع
jokes	نكات	would prefer to + inf.	يفضل
trust	يثق / ثقة	make ....mad	يجعل....مجنونا
disagreement	عدم اتفاق / خلاف	ready for	جاهز ل
spy	جاسوس / يتجسس	feel bad about	يشعر سيئا بخصوص
spies	جواسيس	at the right time	فى الوقت الصحيح
notice	يلاحظ / ملاحظة	talk to / with	يتحدث مع

Act II Scene iii / Act III scene i

(In the countryside.)

KING LEAR: Regan, I will not stay with your sister Goneril. Please, give me clothes, food and a bed Remember, I am old.
REGAN: Please, father! Go back and stay with my sister.
KING LEAR: Never, Regan! She's told half of my soldiers to leave! She's has been cruel and rude to me! I want rain to always fall on her head!
REGAN: You'll want the same to happen to me soon.
KING LEAR: No, Regan, never say bad things about you. Goneril's eyes are cruel, but yours are kind. You would never turn your back on me. And you'd not lock me out of your house. You understand how a daughter should help her father. You haven't forgotten that I've given you half of my kingdom.
REGAN: Father, why are you unhappy?
CORNWALL: Listen! Who's coming?
REGAN: It's my sister. She said in her letter that she would come soon.
[Goneril enters with Oswald.]
KING LEAR: Who put my servant in the stocks? Regan, I hope that you didn't know about this.
[To Goneril.] You shouldn't want to look at me. Oh Regan, why are you holding her hand?
GONERIL: Why shouldn't she hold my hand, father? What have I done wrong?
KING LEAR: Oh, how unhappy you've made me. You're too cruel! Why won't you apologise to me? And why is my servant in the stocks?
CORNWALL: I put him there, sir, because he didn't behave well.
KING LEAR: You? Was it you?
REGAN: Please, father, you're ill today. Stay with my sister until the end of the month. Then, if you ask half of your soldiers to leave, you can come and stay with me.
KING LEAR: Stay with her, and ask my soldiers to leave? No, I would rather sleep outside under the stars.
[To himself] Return with Goneril? I would prefer: to stand in front of the King of France and ask him for food. Go back with her? I would prefer to be the servant of this terrible man.
[Points at Oswald.]
GONERIL: It's your choice, father.
KING LEAR: Please, daughter, don't make me mad. I won't set eyes on you again, my child; goodbye. We won't meet any more. But you will soon feel bad about what you've done. be patient for now, and I'll stay with Regan with my hundred soldiers.
REGAN: That is not possible. My-home isn't ready for you. Listen to my sister. Are fifty soldiers not enough for you?
GONERIL: My servants could help you.
REGAN: Yes, why not, father? We have enough servants. When you come to me (for now I see the danger of so many men), I ask you to bring just twenty-five soldiers. I won't have rooms for any more.
KING LEAR: But Regan, I gave you everything ...
REGAN: And you gave it to me at the right time!
KING LEAR: I gave you enough to live well for all time! I asked for just one thing — to keep a hundred soldiers.-Are you really asking me to come with just twenty-five, Regan?
REGAN: Don't talk to me any more about this.

KING LEAR: [TO Goneril.] Then I'll go back with you. Your fifty soldiers is double her twenty-five, so you must love me twice as much as she does.
GONERIL: Listen, father. You do not need twenty-five, ten or even five soldiers in a house where we have fifty servants to look after you.
REGAN: Why do you even need one soldier?
KING LEAR: Why do I need them? Even the poorest beggars have things that they don't need. If you those beautiful clothes you're wearing. They don't keep you warm at all. But, if you ask me what I really need, I need patience! Oh, give me patience, or I will go mad!
[King Lear exits with Gloucester and the Fool. There is a huge storm.]
CORNWALL: We should go inside; there's a big storm coming.
REGAN: This house is small; there isn't room for Lear and his soldiers.
GONERIL: Where is the Duke of Gloucester?
CORNWALL: He followed Lear.
[Gloucester enters.] Here he is.
GLOUCESTER: The King is very angry. He has called for his horse.
CORNWALL: Let him go. He won't listen to anyone.
GONERIL: Yes, don't try to stop him .
GLOUCESTER: But it is nearly night and strong winds are blowing. There is nowhere to shelter for many kilometres.
REGAN: That will teach him a lesson. Lock the doors. He has his soldiers with him, and who knows what they'll persuade him to do.
CORNWALL: Regan is right. Lock the doors, it's a wet night. Come in out of the storm.
[They exit.)
[In a field in the countryside. The storm continues. Kent enters with a soldier.]
KENT: Who's there, in this terrible weather? Where's the King?
SOLDIER: He's fighting with the wind and the rain. This terrible night would make a bear hide in a cave, but the King is running around outside without even a hat.
KENT: But who's with him?
SOLDIER: Only the Fool, who tries to make him happier with his jokes.
KENT: Sir, I trust you. I have got something to tell you. There's a disagreement between the Dukes of Albany and Cornwall. They both have servants who are really spies for the King of France. They have noticed that the Dukes are both against the King. Now the King of France has sent an army, and the French have spies at some of our ports. If you trust me, go quickly to Dover. There are people there who'll thank you when you tell them about the King's problems. I'm not the person who you think. I'm really an important man. If you see Cordelia, show her this ring, and she'll tell you who I am. Here's some money. Oh, this storm! I must go and find the King.
(They exit)

Exercises on KING LEAR Act II Scene iii / Act III scene i

Choose the correct answer:

1-A/An……..is a person who tries to get secret information about a country, organization, or person, especially somebody who is employed by a government or the police.
(soldier – actor – spy – archaeologist)
2-A place that will protect you from bad weather means………..
(prison – cell – jail – shelter)

3-Something that you tell other people to make them laugh is a / an………
(lock – aim – joke – note)
4-A / An………means very bad weather with strong winds and rain, and often thunder and lightning.
(cloud – earthquake – storm – eruption)
5-He went to prison because he……for another country for years.
(spoiled – spied – tried – tied)
6-……….people behave in a way that is not polite and is likely to offend others.
(Well-mannered – Moral – Rude – Polite)
7-We must encourage children to exercise…….and make their own decisions.
(choice – choose – chosen – chose)
8-My bedroom is so small that there isn't enough………for a desk.
(room – home – house – flat)
9-We had a……about which film to watch, but I let him watch a comedy.
(agreement – disagreement – entertainment - discouragement)
10-Ramy is my best friend. He has a lot of……., so he never gets angry.
(patient – patience – friendly – grief)
11-Your brother makes us laugh when he tells funny………..
(swords – miles – jokes – guns)
12-I asked Hany to…….to Faris for shouting.
(recognize – apologise – answer – look)
13-While driving my car, I couldn't see anything ahead because there was a dust…….
(earthquake – volcano – storm – fig)
14-Hoda finally managed to……her father to let her go out with her friends.
(make – dissuade – persuade – insist)
15-………on the streets are known to ask people for money and food.
(Shelters – Beggars – Baggers – Tigers)
16-Don't go out now. A strong wind is going to……….
(blow – rain – rise – set)
17-Clothes or building that are…….can keep in heat or keep out cold.
(mild – wild – warm – worm)
18-In the past, criminals were locked in the…….as a form of punishment.
(sticks – stakes – stocks – spokes)
19-His wife's death affected him badly and he……….mad.
(made – came – went – took)
20-While climbing the mountain, they stayed for a night in a / an……..to protect themselves from heavy rains.
(inn – stream – cave – office)
21-They…….their eyes on the criminal to know his partners.
(sit – met – set – bit)
22-You should apologise……..your elder sister now.
(for – to – of – about)

King Lear Act III scene ii,iii,iv

New Vocabulary

forgive	يسامح	dead	ميت
cruel to	قاسى مع	troch	كشاف
hut	كوخ	mice	فئران
shelter	مأوى / يأوى	apart from	باستثناء
rest	راحة / يستريح	lock	يغلق / قفل
hard-hearted	قاس القلب	ready for	مستعد ل
force	يجبر	accept	يقبل
straw	قش	offer	عرض
horrible	فظيع / رهيب	philosopher	فيلسوف
sleep on	ينام على	research	بحث / يبحث
behave	يسلك	kill	يقتل
disagreement	عدم اتفاق	die	يموت
dangerous	خطير	death	موت / حالة وفاة
careful	حريص	point to	يشير الى
immediately	فى الحال	lightning	البرق
reward	مكافأة / يكافىء	rise	تشرق / ينهض
get rewarded	يحصل على مكافأة	burn	يحرق
win the trust	يكسب ثقة	fall	يسقط
lose the trust	يفقد ثقة	go into	يدخل
impossible for	مستحيل على	walk in someone's shoes	يكون فى مكان شخص
go mad	يصاب بالجنون	walking fire	نار متحركة
homeless	بلا مأوى	footprints	أثار أقدام
hungry	جائع	army	جيش
stomach	معدة	keep away from	يبعد عن
rich	غنى	keep warm	يبقى دافئا
try walking in	يجرب المشى فى	come out of	يخرج من
shoes	حذاء	accept his offer	يقبل عروض
frightened	خائف	blanket	بطانية
disguise	يتنكر	servant	خادم
try	يجرب	proud	فخور

Act III scene ii,iii,iv

[In another part of the field. The storm continues. King Lear enters with the Fool.]

KING LEAR: Blow winds, and let the rain fill our houses with water! Let lightning cut a tree in two, and burn my white hair!
FOOL: Oh, old man, go inside, and ask your daughters to forgive you!
KING LEAR: I'm a poor, weak old man. Why is the weather being cruel to me, like my daughters?
[Kent enters.]

KING LEAR: Who's there?
FOOL: Ah, here's someone who is both a wise man and a fool.
KENT: Oh no, why are you here? Even bears want to stay in their caves on a night like this. There's so much wind and rain! The storm is terrible. Your majesty, there's a poor man's but near here. !t will shelter you from the storm. Stay there and rest, while I go to the house of your hardhearted daughters.
KING LEAR: When I asked for you, they did not let me in their house, so I'll force them to allow you in. But I think I'm going mad! .-'[To the Foal] How are you, my boy? I'm cold. Where's the straw? It's strange how 1 now want to have horrible things such as a bed of straw to sleep on!
[King Lear exits with Kent)
[At Gloucester's castle. Gloucester enters with Edmund]
GLOUCESTER: Oh, Edmund, l don't like the way Goneril and Regan are behaving with their father! When I asked them to help Lear, they told me not to talk about him or to look after him. **EDMUND**: That's very cruel of them!
GLOUCESTER: Go to them; but do not say anything. There is some disagreement between the two Dukes, and maybe something even worse than that. I got a letter tonight **[To himself]** No, it's too dangerous to talk about it to him. **[To Edmund.]** I have locked the letter in my bedroom. Some of the French army have already arrived in England. We must help King Lear. I will go and look for him and help him. You go and talk to the Duke of Cornwall and do not tell him where I am. If he asks for me, tell him I'm ill and have gone to bed. Strange things are happening, Edmund. Please be careful.
[He exits.]
EDMUND: **[To himself]** I'll go and tell the Duke immediately about your worries for the King, father. I will tell him about that letter, too. Then I'll get rewarded for this, and I'll win the trust that my father loses. The younger man rises as the old man falls! **He exits.**
[In a field in front of a hut. King Lear enters with Kent and the Fool.]
KENT: Here is a but where we can shelter, my lord. Please, go inside. This terrible storm makes it impossible for anyone to stay outside.
KING LEAR: Oh, my cruel children! You sent me out into a terrible storm like this. Oh Regan, Goneril! Your kind old father gave you everything! But I'll go mad if I think about this. I won't think about it anymore!
KENT: Please, go inside.
KING LEAR: **[To the Fool.]** You go in first, my boy.
[The Fool goes into the hut.]
Poor homeless people, you are always outside when there's a cruel storm. How can your hungry stomachs and old clothes help you when it rains? Why have I not thought about this before? Rich people should try walking in a poor person's shoes, and then the world would be a better place for us all.
[The Fool enters. He has just come out of the but and he's very frightened]
FOOL Don't go in there, sir. There's a mad man in that hut.
KENT: Who's in there?
FOOL: A mad man! He says his name is Poor Tom.
KENT: Who are you? Come out here.
Edgar enters disguised as a madman called Poor Tom.
EDGAR: Keep away from me

KING LEAR: Are you mad like me? Have you given everything to your two daughters?
EDGAR: Nobody gives anything to Poor Tom.
KING LEAR: Have his daughters done this to him? **[To Edgar.]** Don't you have anything?
FOOL: No, he only has a blanket.
KING LEAR: Only cruel daughters could have made a man so poor. Who were you?
EDGAR: I was a servant, who was very proud.
KING LEAR: It would be better if you were dead than go around, with nothing but a blanket on a night like this!
FOOL: Look, here comes a walking fire.
[Gloucester enters carrying a torch]
KING LEAR: Who's this?
GLOUCESTER: What's your name?
EDGAR: My name is Poor Torn, and 1 once had six shirts to wear and a horse to ride, but now all I have is mice to eat.
GLOUCESTER: Has your majesty nobody to help you apart from this mad man? Why have our children grown up to be so terrible, my lord? Why do they hate their fathers?
EDGAR: Poor Tom's cold.
GLOUCESTER: Come inside with me, your majesty. I didn't want to do what your cruel daughters asked me to do. They asked me to lock the doors and leave you outside on this terrible night. I've come to find you and take you home, where there's a fire and food ready for you.
KENT: My lord, please accept this man's offer and go to the house.
KING LEAR: First, let me talk to this philosopher. What are you researching?
EDGAR: I am researching how to keep warm and to kill mice.
KENT: **[To Gloucester.]** Ask him again, my lord. He's beginning to go mad. He thinks the poor man is a philosopher.
[Gloucester holds his torch it in front of him and looking at Edgar and Kent, but they are both disguised.]
GLOUCESTER: I'm not surprised Lear is mad. His daughters want him to die. Ah, that good man, Kent! He knew what would happen — the poor man! I'm almost mad myself. I have a son who tried to kill me. No father loved his son more than I loved him. What a night this is! Please, your majesty, come with me.
EDGAR: Tom's cold.
GLOUCESTER: Go into your hut, Tom; keep yourself warm.
KENT: This way, your majesty.
KING LEAR: **[Pointing to Edgar.]** I am going with him.
KENT: My lord, let him bring the poor man with us.
GLOUCESTER: OK. Sir, come on; come with us.
KING LEAR: Let's go then, my good philosopher. **[They exit.]**

Exercises on KING LEAR Act III scene ii,iii,iv

Choose the correct answer:

1-To help their family and pay for their education, some of the poor university students work as domestic…………

(masters – servants – princesses – landlords)

2-We need to put these plants next to the wall to……them from the wind and direct sunlight.

(colour – shelter – provide – kidnap)

3-A……is a light you can carry to help you see when it's dark.

(torch – pile – website – hut)

4-We got lost in the desert and spent the night in a wooden………..

(tone – hut – palace – website)

5-The old tree behind our house burnt down when it was struck by…during last night's storm.

(lightning – thunder – downpour – torch)

6-The old woman locked the poor child for two days without food. What a / an……… woman she is!

(stone-faced / hard-hearted / soft-hearted / kind-hearted)

7-Kamal should be a……..when he grows up because he likes to think about important questions.

(farmer – barber – philosopher – diver)

8-When you stop being angry with someone and stop blaming them, although they have done something wrong, you actually………them.

(upload – regret – forgive – treat)

9-………..people need to be provided with somewhere to stay when the weather is cold.

(Homeless – Careless – Faithless – Harmless)

10-The young man………himself using a wig, false beard and dark sunglasses.

(realized – advised – organized – disguised)

11-A……stomach, an empty pocket and a broken hear can teach the best lessons of life.

(promising – sheltered – hungry – full)

12-Supplies of food, medicine and………..were sent to help survivors of all flood.

(agreements – caves – blankets – straws)

13-The robbers………the poor shop assistant to hand over the money.

(forced – had – behaved – let)

14-A deep breath out that shows you are tired, sad or disappointed means a /an……..

(sigh – end – sign – idea)

15-A / An……….means light you can carry to help you to see.

(lightning – torch – edition – flash)

16-A person who studies and thinks about the meaning of life means a/ an……..

(archaeologist – therapist – educationalist – philosopher)

17-To……means to stop feeling angry with someone who does something wrong, annoy, or upset you; to stop feeling angry with yourself.

(remember – remain – forgive – revenge)

18-A small building usually with one room means a/ an……..

(hut – establishment – charity – are)

19-Dry yellow wheat used to feed animals means………

(sand – straw – grains – bills)

20-Whe had lunch in a restaurant downtown yesterday, but it wasn't good and my…….. hurt me badly.

(hand – knee – elbow – stomach)

General Exercises on Act II&III

Choose the correct answer

1. Although they……………… the price, he refused to sell the old car

a. reduced **b. doubled** **c. decreased** **d. limited**

2. Do you know that camels can…………. being thirsty for 15 days ?

a. tear **b. protect** **c. defend** **d. bear**

3.It is not accepted to …... your back on someone while talking with him.

a. turn **b. replace** **c. change** **d. run**

4. Finally, they managed to …………… here. It was a long tiring journey.

a. give **b. get** **c. take** **d. make**

5. Do you agree to help us or you will....... your mind ?

a. change **b. replace** **c. correct** **d. charge**

6. She called………………… for help when the thieves grabbed her bag.

a. in **b. on** **c. out** **d. with**

7.The weather was very bad yesterday. I was afraid of the thunder and the………. .

a. lightening **b. lightness** **c. lighthouse** **d. lightning**

8. When I entered the kitchen, there were muddy .... on the floor. Someone entered and walked in the kitchen while we were out.

a. fingerprints **b. footprints** **c. footpath** **d. fingernails**

9.To .... means to make a secret plan to do something that is wrong to another person.

a. plot for **b. protect from** **c. escape from** **d. plot against**

10. To be loyal, continue to support someone means to be………….. .

a. hateful **b. respectful** **c. helpful** **d. faithful**

11.To .... means to get someone to do something or agree with you.

a. persuade **b delete** **c. determine** **d. spy**

12. A place where ships enter and leave a town or country means a/an ………….. .

a. station **b. establishment** **c. port** **d. organization**

13. ………………. means bright light that comes in the sky in a storm.

a. Thunder **b. Hurricane** **c. Volcano** **d. Lightning**

14. A group of things put on top of each other means a/an……………. .

a. collection **b. option** **c. pile** **d. addition**

15. To………… means to ask for something in a way that shows you need it very much.

a. beg **b. bring** **c. sting** **d. dig**

16. …...........means a situation where people don't agree about something and often argue.

a. Agreement **b. Disagreement** **c. Management** **d. Employment**

17. A large hole in the side of a hill or under the ground means a/an …………… .

a. cave **b. oasis** **c. gulf** **d. island**

تم بحمد الله